طبعة جديدة 2027

EL-MOASSER GUIDE

English

By a group of supervisors

الصف الرابع الابتدائى — الفصل الدراسى الأول

تطبيق المعاصر التفاعلى

FIRST TERM

4th Primary 2027

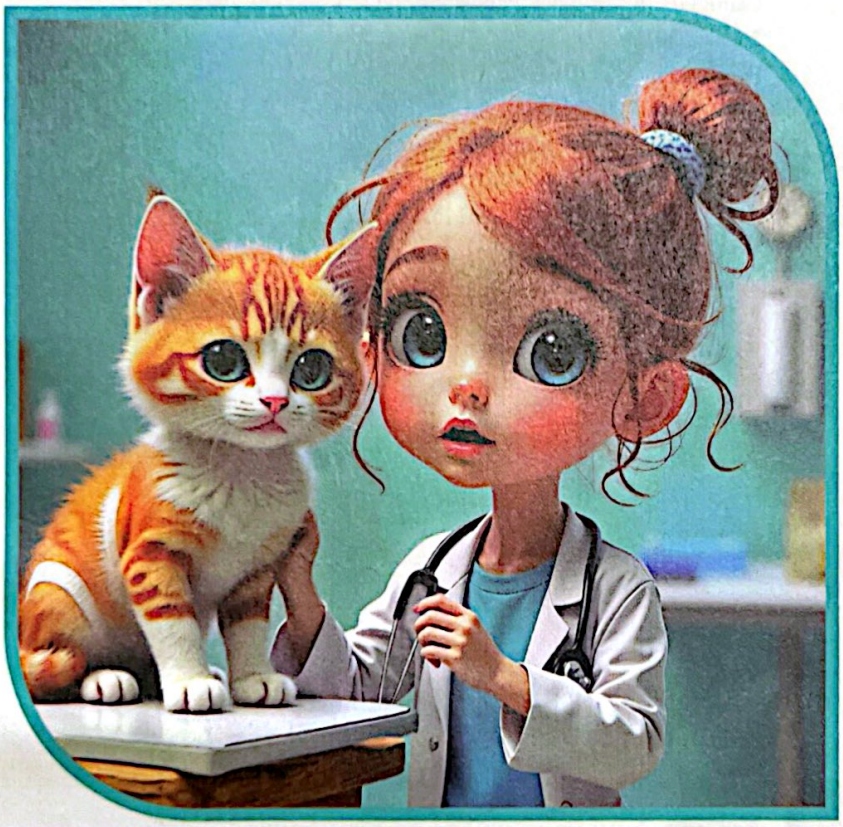
Scanned with CamScanner

EL-MOASSER
GUIDE

English

By a group of supervisors

الصف الرابع الابتدائى الفصل الدراسى الأول



GPS
AL TALABA BOOKSTORE
For printing, publication & distribution
El Faggala - Cairo - Egypt
Tel.: 02/ 259 340 12 - 259 377 91
15014
www.gpseducation.com

4th Primary
FIRST TERM

All rights reserved

Scanned with CamScanner

بسم الله الرحمن الرحيم

﴿إِنَّ الَّذِينَ آمَنُوا وَعَمِلُوا الصَّالِحَاتِ إِنَّا لَا نُضِيعُ أَجْرَ مَنْ أَحْسَنَ عَمَلًا﴾ صدق الله العظيم

Egyptian National Library
Cataloging During Publishing
Prepared by Technical Affairs Department

El-Moasser Guide based on English for Primary Schools
By a Group of Supervisors.
Cairo: GPS for Printing, Publishing and Distribution, 2026 - 2027
2 vols. ; 30 cm.
For 4th primary- First Term
I.S.B.N : 978 - 977 - 970 - 344 - 2
1. English language - study and teaching (primary).
2. Education, Primary 372.6521

رقم الإيداع : ١٣٢٩٦ / ٢٠٢٦

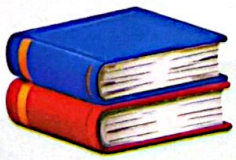
Name : .....

School : .....

Grade : .....

Class : .....

Teacher's name : .....



Scanned with CamScanner

CONTENTS

PART ONE: Pre-Assessment

Round 1 Assess Yourself 10

Round 2 Learn and Return 11

Round 3 Unlock Your Grade 4 Journey 14

PART TWO

UNIT 1:
The Five Senses 22

UNIT 2:
My Community 66

UNIT 3:
Animals in Our World 111

REVIEW 1: 154

UNIT 4:
Egypt My Homeland 156

UNIT 5:
A Day at Work 194

UNIT 6:
The Hundred Dresses 235

PART THREE

El-Moasser Homework Notebook 244

Scanned with CamScanner

Your Guidebook

Find your way around!

1 Pre-Assessment

ابدأ واستعد لرحلة التعلم

الهدف منه تجهيز الطالب لرحلة التعلم
عن طريق ثلاث جولات:

الجولة الأولى: تحديد مستوى الطالب وما يتقنه ويحتاجه

الجولة الثانية: حسب نتيجتك فى كل مستوى،
تعلم ثم أعد المحاولة لاجتياز كل مستوى

الجولة الثالثة: المهارات الأساسية التى يستعد بها الطالب لدراسة منهجه

2 Lessons

عرض شامل مبسط لدروس الوحدة
مدعم بالصور التوضيحية

3 General Exercises on Lessons

تدريبات على الوحدات مقسمة إلى:

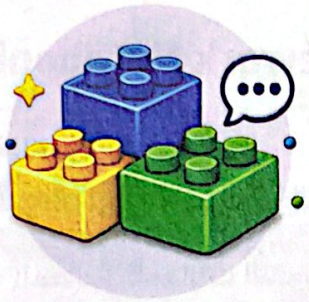
- تدريبات المعاصر
- تدريبات كتاب الطالب والتقييمات واختبارات المحافظات السابقة

Scanned with CamScanner

Keep going on your way

4 Accumulative Dictation

- إملاء تراكمى على الدروس
- اختبار لقياس وتقييم مدى استيعاب الطالب للمفردات اللغوية



5 Skills

- كيفية التعامل مع مهارة القراءة
- مهارة التعامل مع سؤال تصحيح الخطأ
- تعلم كيف تكون وترتب جمل وأسئلة
- اكتب موضوعك خطوة بخطوة
- كيفية التعامل مع مهارة الكتابة

6 Review through the Exam

مراجعة الوحدة من خلال كتاب الطالب والتقييمات واختبارات المحافظات

7 Sample Tests on Units

اختبارات على كل وحدة:

١- اختبار المعاصر

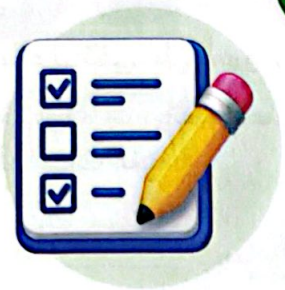
٢- اختبار مجمع من كتاب الطالب، كتاب التقييمات والاختبارات السابقة

٣- اختبارات لطلاب الازهر الشريف

Scanned with CamScanner

Keep going on your way

8 Monthly assessments



التقييمات الشهرية لشهر أكتوبر ونوفمبر

تتضمن مراجعة وتدريبات على كل شهـــر

من مختلف المحافظات فى كراسة المعاصر للتقييمات

9 El-Moasser Homework Notebook

- **كراسة المعاصر للتقييمات**
  اليومية والاسبوعية والشهرية والواجب المنزلى
- **كراسة المعاصر للمهارات اللغوية** لإتقان مهارات
  القراءة والكتابة

10 El-Moasser Interactive Notebook

يصرف **مجانًا** مع الكتاب

كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية والمراجعة النهائية:

مراجعة المنهج بالكامل والتمكن منه فى أسبوع واحد :

- دليلك للتعامل مع كتاب التقييمات والاداءات الصفية ٢٠٢٧
- مراجعة على كل وحدة
- تدريبات من كتاب الطالب والتقييمات والمحافظات المختلفة
- أنماط أسئلة مجمعة من كتاب الطالب والتقييمات
- اختبارات مجمعة من كتاب التقييمات
- اختبارات المحافظات على المنهج بالكامل
- اختبارات لطلاب الازهر الشريف
- اختبارات لطلاب الدمج

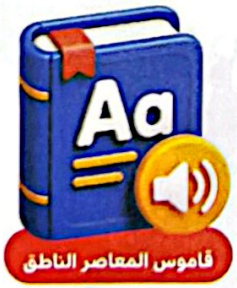
Scanned with CamScanner

El-Moasser

enjoy learning English

El-Moasser

Scan & Listen



Scan Qr code

قاموس المعاصر الناطق

لـو عايـز تتعلم نطق الكلمات صح

El-Moasser

Homework Notebook

كراسة المعاصر للتقييمات والواجب المنزلى

تستخدم بالتوازى مع كتاب الشرح يوميًا، أسبوعيًا وشهريًا.

Scanned with CamScanner

QR Code

التطبيق التفاعلى من سلسلة كتب ...

الامتحان المعاصر

1. نزل التطبيق. 2. أنشئ حسابك. 3. أدخل الكود الموجود على ظهر الغلاف.

استمتع بجميع مزايا التطبيق

لجميع المواد الدراسية

- شرح
- فيديوهات
- ألعاب تعليمية
- امتحانات تفاعلية
- تدريبات
- تواصل مع معلمك
- تقارير متابعة
- إشعارات
- أخبار

تم تصنيف أسئلة الكتاب فى كل درس طبقًا لمستويات هرم بلوم والإشارة لها كالتالى :

● فهم ● تطبيق ● تحليل ● تقويم ● ابتكار

المستويات العليا من التفكير

المستويات الدنيا من التفكير

إنتاج أفكار جديدة
صمم - اقترح - نمذج

الحكم على المعلومات لاتخاذ القرارات
قيّم - فنّد - قرّر - أعط رأيك

تجزئة الفكرة إلى عناصرها وتحديد العلاقات بينها
فرّق - دلل - حلل

استخدام المعلومات فى مواقف مشابهة جديدة
اربط - طبّق - استخدم

إدراك معنى المعلومات وشرحها
قارن - استنتج - وضح بمثال

استرجاع المعلومات السابق دراستها
اذكر - عرّف - حدّد - عدّد

Scanned with CamScanner

PART 1

Pre-Assessment

ابدأ واستعد لرحلة التعلم

Round 1 Assess Yourself

اختبار لقياس ما يتقنه و يحتاجه الطالب قبل بداية المنهج.

الهدف منه تجهيز الطالب لرحلة التعلم عن طريق ثلاث جولات:

الجولة الاولى: تحديد مستوى الطالب وما يتقنه و يحتاجه.

الجولة الثانية: حسب نتيجتك فى كل مستوى، تعلم ثم اعد المحاولة لاجتياز كل مستوى.

الجولة الثالثة: المهارات الأساسية التى يستعد بها الطالب لدراسة منهجه.

Round 2 Learn and Return

الطالب الحاصل على:

1. الدرجات (6 - 5) ينتقل إلى المستوى التالى أو إلى الجولة الثالثة (ابدأ رحلتك الى الصف الدراسى)
2. الدرجات (4 - 1) ينتقل إلى جزء تعلم وأعد المحاولة لإتقان المطلوب منه ثم يقوم بإعادة المحاولة مرة اخرى.

ينتقل الطالب إلى الجولة الثالثة فى حالة اجتياز المستويين الأول والثانى بحصوله على الدرجات (6 - 5) فى كل مستوى.

Round 3 Unlock Your Grade 4 Journey

المهارات الأساسية التى تساعد الطالب على التعامل مع الصف الدراسى

امنح ثقتك لمن يستحق! لنبدأ الرحلة معًا!

Scanned with CamScanner

Round 1

Assess Yourself

قيّم نفسك

اختبر نفسك واكتشف ما تتقنه وما تحتاجه للتدريب قبل أن تبدأ رحلتك الجديدة.

Level 1

1 Choose the correct answer between brackets. [6 Marks]

1. My favorite color is [red - square - circle].
2. I sleep in my [kitchen - bedroom - garden].
3. We eat when we feel [angry - hungry - thirsty].
4. I feel [sad - happy - nervous] when I pass the exam.
5. He is my [mother - father - sister].
6. We eat in the [garden - bathroom - dining room].

5-6 marks **Great!** Move To level 2
رائع! انتقل إلى المستوى الثاني.

1-4 marks Move to learn & Return Round 1
انتقل إلى جزء تعلم وأعد المحاولة 1

Level 2

1 Read, order and write. [3 Marks]

1. play - **They** - the garden - in. .....
2. have - **I** - apples - two. .....
3. plays- **He** - tennis. .....

2 Write THREE (3) sentences about. [3 Marks]

"Your family"

.....

.....

.....

.....

5-6 marks **Great!** Move To Grade 4
رائع! انتقل إلى الصف الرابع.

1-4 marks Move To Learn & Return Round 2
انتقل إلى جزء تعلم واعد المحاولة 2

Scanned with CamScanner

Round 2

1. Learn and Return 1

تعلم ثم اعد المحاولة لاجتياز المستوى الأول

Vocabulary

Colors and Shapes	الألوان والأشكال
red	أحمر
blue	أزرق
green	أخضر
yellow	أصفر
circle	دائرة
square	مربع
triangle	مثلث

Feelings	المشاعر
happy	سعيد
excited	متحمس
hungry	جائع
thirsty	عطشان
tired	متعب
sad	حزين
angry	غاضب
nervous	متوتر

Rooms in the House	غرف المنزل
kitchen	مطبخ
bedroom	غرفة النوم
bathroom	مرحاض
living room	غرفة المعيشة
dining room	غرفة الطعام
garden	حديقة
hall	صالة
balcony	شرفة

Family	العائلة
mother / mom	أم
father / dad	أب
brother	أخ
sister	أخت
grandmother	جدة
grandfather	جد

Animals	الحيوانات
cat	قطة
dog	كلب
fish	سمكة
fox	ثعلب
sheep	خروف
bird	طائر
camel	جمل

Daily Routine	الروتين اليومي
wake up	يستيقظ
sleep	ينام
brush teeth	يغسل أسنانه (بالفرشاة)
wash	يغسل
cook	يطبخ
eat breakfast	يتناول وجبة الافطار
go to school	يذهب إلى المدرسة
watch TV	يشاهد التلفاز

Scanned with CamScanner

2. Learn and Return 2

تعلم ثم اعد المحاولة لاجتياز المستوى الثانى

How to make a sentence

جزء ينمى لدى الطالب مهارة استخدام الكلمات وترتيبها لتكوين جملة صحيحة.

1 Parts of speech

أجزاء الكلام

تنقسم الكلمات إلى عدة أنواع يتعرف التلميذ فى هذا الجزء على بعض منها.

1 noun الاسم

goat
عنزة

bag
حقيبة

boy
ولد

Salma
سلمى

2 Verb الفعل

eat
يأكل

read
يقرأ

play
يلعب

run
يجرى

3 adjective الصفة

small ant
نملة صغيرة

big camel
جمل كبير

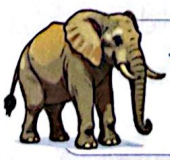
4 preposition حرف جر

in the morning
فى الصباح

on the table
على المنضدة

5 pronoun ضمير

Adam is tall. He isn't short.
آدم طويل. هو ليس قصير.



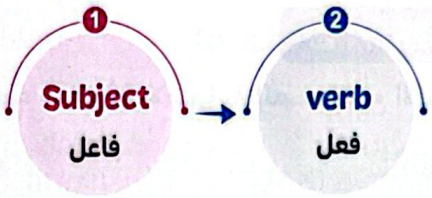
The elephant is big. It isn't small.
الفيل كبير. هو ليس صغير.

- معرفة التلميذ لنوع الكلمة يساعده على استخدامها بطريقة صحيحة لتكوين جملة.

Scanned with CamScanner

2 Sentence

Subject الفاعل



Omar الفاعل

Omar plays tennis.

He plays tennis.

الفاعل He وهو ضمير فاعل
يحل محل الفاعل Omar

الفاعل قد يكون (اسم) أو يكون ضمير من (ضمائر الفاعل) التالية :

Subject pronouns ضمائر الفاعل

I أنا	He هو	She هى	It هو/ هى	You أنت / أنتم	They هم	We نحن
عندما يتحدث الشخص عن نفسه	عندما نتحدث عن شخص مفرد مذكر	عندما نتحدث عن شخص مفرد مؤنث	عندما نتحدث عن شيء مفرد غير عاقل	عندما نخاطب شخص أو أكثر	عندما نتحدث عن اثنين أو أكثر	عندما يذكر الشخص نفسه مع الاخرين

الضمائر المفردة

He She It

I

You

الضمائر الجمع

They

We

You

Scanned with CamScanner

Round 3

Unlock Your Grade 4 Journey

ابدأ رحلتك نحو الصف الرابع الابتدائى

Specifications for Fourth Year Primary 2026-2027

مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية للصف الرابع الابتدائى ٢٠٢٦ - ٢٠٢٧

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False : *(2 Marks)*

A listening text of about **FIFTY (50)** words at the appropriate difficulty level for primary **FOUR** followed by **FOUR (4)** sentences is provided. Topics should be related to the Set Books. Learners are asked to listen to the text and write (T) True or (F) False. *(Half a mark each)*

Practice

تدرب وطبق مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية من خلال نماذج وأسئلة تحاكى عناصر الاختبار

السؤال الاول فى الورقة الامتحانية : استمع واكتب (T) صح او (F) خطأ.

سؤال الاستماع هو نص مكون من حوالى (50) كلمة يسمعه الطالب ثم يجيب على (4) جمل بـ (T) إذا كانت الإجابة صحيحة أو (F) إذا كانت الاجابة خاطئة.

Mona is a kind girl. She lives with her family in a small house. Every morning, she gets up early and goes to school. She likes English and art. After school, she helps her mother at home. In the evening, Mona reads a short story.

1. Mona is a kind girl. ☐
2. Mona lives in a big house. ☐
3. Mona likes English and art. ☐
4. Mona plays football in the evening. ☐

الإجابة على السؤال :

١. اقرأ الجمل جيداً قبل الاستماع الى النص.

٢. أثناء الاستماع الى النص، انتبه الى الاسماء (Mona - mother)، الأماكن (school).

٣. لاحظ يمكن ان تكون الجملة خطأ بسبب كلمة واحدة.

Mona lives in a big house. (F)

الإجابة خاطئة (F) لأن فى الجملة (big house) وليس (small house) كما في نص الاستماع.

Exam Tip

Specifications for Fourth Year Primary 2026-2027

مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية للصف الرابع الابتدائى ٢٠٢٦ - ٢٠٢٧

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d : *(3 Marks)*

SIX (6) multiple choice questions **MCQs (3** vocabulary and **3** structures) related to what learners have studied are provided. Learners are asked to choose the correct answer from the **FOUR (4)** options given. *(Half a mark each)*

Scanned with CamScanner

Practice تدرب وطبق مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية من خلال نماذج وأسئلة تحاكى عناصر الاختبار

السؤال الثاني فى الورقة الامتحانية : اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.
سؤال الاختيار من متعدد هو ستة (6) جمل معطاة للطالب (3) على المفردات اللغوية و(3) على القواعد اللغوية.
يقوم الطالب باختيار الإجابة الصحيحة من بين (4) خيارات معطاه.

1. I ..... a circle.
   a. draw b. read c. eat d. drink
2. She ..... to school every morning.
   a. go b. goes c. going d. to go
3. We ..... books to the school library.
   a. donate b. donates c. to donate d. donating
4. I brush ..... teeth every morning.
   a. his b. my c. her d. I
5. ..... is your name? - I'm Rana.
   a. What b. How c. Where d. Why
6. The ..... grows vegetables.
   a. nurse b. pilot c. farmer d. teacher

الإجابة على السؤال :
١. فى الجملة الأولى كلمة (circle) تحتاج إلى اختيار فعل مناسب فى المعنى وهو (draw).
٢. فى الجملة الثانية الجملة فى زمن المضارع البسيط لوجود (every) لذلك نختار (goes) مع الفاعل المفرد (She).
٣. فى الجملة الثالثة نختار (donate) بدون اضافة لأن الفاعل (We) ضمير الجمع فى زمن المضارع.
٤. فى الجملة الرابعة نختار (my) لأن الفاعل (I) .
٥. نستخدم (What) لأن السؤال عن اسم .
٦. نستخدم (farmer) لأنها الإجابة المناسبة لتكملة الجملة (grows vegetables).

Specifications for Fourth Year Primary 2026 - 2027

مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية للصف الرابع الابتدائى ٢٠٢٦ - ٢٠٢٧

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box : *[2 Marks]*

An unseen text from **FORTY (40)** to **FIFTY (50)** words with **FOUR (4)** deletions is provided. **FIVE (5)** words related to vocabulary are also given in a box. Learners are asked to complete each deletion in the text with **ONE (1)** of the **FIVE (5)** words given. The first sentence should be written in full. *(Half a mark each)*

Practice تدرب وطبق مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية من خلال نماذج وأسئلة تحاكى عناصر الاختبار

السؤال الثالث في الورقة الامتحانية : اقرأ واكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.
فى هذا السؤال يعطى الطالب نصاً مكون من (40) إلى (50) كلمة به (4) فراغات
ويعطى الطالب (5) كلمات يستخدم منها (4) كلمات لتكملة النص.

English - teacher - like - big - kitchen

I go to school every day. Our school is (1) ..... and clean. I (2) ..... my teachers and my friends. We have many subjects. My favorite subject is (3) ..... . I always do my homework carefully. I want to be a (4) ..... in the future.

Scanned with CamScanner

◄ الإجابة على السؤال :
بعد قراءة النص جيدًا، نجد أن :
- رقم (١) الكلمة المناسبة هى (big) لإكمال وصف المدرسة (clean).
- رقم (٢) الكلمة المناسبة هى (like) لوجود (teachers).
- رقم (٣) الكلمة المناسبة هى (English) لوجود (subject).
- رقم (٤) الكلمة المناسبة هى (teacher) لوجود (want to be).

Specifications for Fourth Year Primary 2026 - 2027

مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية للصف الرابع الابتدائى ٢٠٢٦ - ٢٠٢٧

4 Read the text and answer the questions: *(8 Marks)*

An unseen literary or informational text from **SEVENTY (70)** to **EIGHTY (80)** words is provided. The text should be at the appropriate difficulty level for primary **FOUR**. Learners are asked to answer:

A. TWO (2) MCQs with **FOUR (4)** options *(One mark each)*

B. THREE (3) open-ended *(2 marks each)*

The questions should test the following reading comprehension skills :

- Identify the general idea of the text.
- Demonstrate understanding of specific details in a text.
- Determine the meaning of words and phrases in a text.
- Make logical inferences from the text.
- Summarize the key supporting details and ideas in a text.

Practice

تدرب وطبق مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية من خلال نماذج وأسئلة تحاكى عناصر الاختبار

السؤال الرابع فى الورقة الامتحانية : اقرأ النص واجب عن الاسئلة.

To stay safe <u>online</u>, you have to follow some important instructions. Keep your password secret. You shouldn't tell people your personal information (e.g. telephone number). Don't make friends with people you don't know online. Don't send photos to people you don't know. Don't answer a phone call or video call from someone you don't know. If you are worried about something, tell a parent or a teacher. Everyone should follow these instructions to stay safe online.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Identify the general idea of the text. حدد الفكرة العامة فى النص.

1. This text is about "..... ".
   a. Pollution b. Celebrating festivals
   c. Having fun d. Being safe online

2. Demonstrate understanding of specific details in the text. وضح فهمك لتفاصيل معينة في النص.

2. You should tell your ..... if you're worried about something.
   a. neighbors b. friends c. parents d. classmates

Scanned with CamScanner

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Determine the meaning of words and phrases in the text.

حدد معنى كلمات أو عبارات في النص.

3. What does the underlined word "online" mean?
   - It means connected to the internet.

4. Make logical inferences from the text. ضع استنتاجات منطقية في النص.

- What are the instructions you should follow to stay safe online? Mention two اذكر اثنين.
  - Don't make friends with people you don't know.
  - Don't send photos to people you don't know.

5. Summarize the key supporting details and ideas in the text.

لخص التفاصيل والأفكار الرئيسية والفرعية في النص.

- Summarize the text in one sentence.
  - Staying safe online is very important.

Specifications for Fourth Year Primary 2026 - 2027

مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية للصف الرابع الابتدائى ٢٠٢٦ - ٢٠٢٧

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets : *[4 Marks]*

FOUR (4) structure sentences related to what learners have studied are provided. Learners are asked to complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) given between brackets. *[One mark each]*

Practice

تدرب وطبق مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية من خلال نماذج وأسئلة تحاكى عناصر الاختبار

السؤال الخامس فى الورقة الامتحانية : اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات بين الاقواس.

يعطى الطالب (4) جمل على القواعد اللغوية ويقوم بتصحيح الكلمات بين الأقواس لتناسب زمن الجملة.

1. Hossam ..... **(go)** to the library every Saturday.
2. We ..... **(plays)** computer games every day.
3. This ..... **(are)** my bag.
4. There ..... **(is)** three books on the table.

الإجابة على السؤال :

اقرأ الجملة جيدًا وحاول إيجاد كلمة دالة على الزمن ثم اكتب الشكل الصحيح للفعل.

Specifications for Fourth Year Primary 2026 - 2027

مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية للصف الرابع الابتدائى ٢٠٢٦ - ٢٠٢٧

6 Punctuate the following : *[4 Marks]*

TWO (2) simple statements (a sentence and a question) of about **SIX (6)** words each are provided. Each statement has **TWO (2)** missing punctuation marks (Capital Letter, Full Stop or Question Mark). Learners are asked to punctuate them correctly. *[2 marks each]*

Scanned with CamScanner

Practice

تدرب وطبق مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية من خلال نماذج وأسئلة تحاكى عناصر الاختبار

السؤال السادس فى الورقة الامتحانية : ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى.

يعطى للطالب جملتين بكل منها علامتين ترقيم يقوم الطالب بتصحيحهما.

1. he is a police officer .....
2. where did they go after lunch .....

الإجابة على السؤال :

١. اقرأ الجملة كاملة أولًا قبل اختيار العلامة.

٢. تأكد من وضع علامات الترقيم فى مكانها الصحيح.

1 Capital Letters : الحروف الكبيرة

تستخدم مع

1. بداية الجملة...
   - الخبرية → He is tall.
   - الاستفهامية → What is your name?
   - الأمرية → Open your bag.
2. أسماء المدن والبلاد والأماكن المشهورة → Egypt, Cairo, the Egyptian Museum
3. أسماء البحار والانهار → the Red Sea, the River Nile
4. أيام الأسبوع وشهور السنة → Friday, May
5. أسماء الأشخاص → Ahmed, Mona
6. اللغات والجنسيات → English, Arabic, Egyptian
7. الضمير "I" فى أى مكان فى الجملة → I can swim. Can I swim?

Scanned with CamScanner

2 Full stop :

توضع النقطة [.] فى نهاية الجملة الخبرية والأمرية.

- I am Kareem.
- Open the door, please.

3 Question mark :

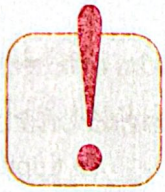
توضع علامة الاستفهام [?] فى نهاية السؤال.

- How are you?

4 Exclamation mark :

تستخدم علامة التعجب [!] فى حالة الترحيب أو التعجب.

- Wow !
- Hello !
- How wonderful !
- Help !
- What a nice car !



5 Apostrophe :

1 تستخدم الفاصلة العليا [’] فى الاختصارات مثل
[am=’m / is = ’s / are = ’re / have = ’ve]

2 تستخدم مع [’s] الملكية.

1 It’s a puppet.

2 That is Heba’s car.

6 Comma :

1 تستخدم الفاصلة السفلية [,] بعد Yes أو No.

2 تستخدم للفصل بين مجموعة من الأشياء من نوع واحد.

3 توضع الفاصلة [,] بعد المخاطب فى أول الجملة وقبل المخاطب فى آخر الجملة.

4 توضع قبل كلمة [please] فى آخر الكلام وبعد [please] أول الكلام.

- Yes, I am.
- No, I am not.
- I met Samya, Heba and Nabila.
- Come here, Noha.
- Noha, come here.
- Please, keep quiet.
- Pass the cake, please.

Scanned with CamScanner

Specifications for Fourth Year Primary 2026-2027

مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية للصف الرابع الابتدائى ٢٠٢٦ - ٢٠٢٧

7 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below:

(7 Marks)

Learners are asked to write a (paragraph / A friendly letter / Email / Narrative Paragraph / Blog Post / Post Card) of **FOUR (4)** sentences of not less than **TWENTY FIVE (25)** words using the **THREE (3)** guiding words given.
(Two marks for relevance of ideas - Two marks for vocabulary - One mark for grammar - One mark for spelling - One mark for punctuation)

Practice

تدرب وطبق مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية من خلال نماذج وأسئلة تحاكى عناصر الاختبار

السؤال السابع فى الورقة الامتحانية : اكتب فقرة إنشائية مكونه من اربع جمل باستخدام الكلمات الاتية.
يعطى الطالب اسم الموضوع ليقوم بكتابة (4) جمل ويعطى ثلاثة كلمات مساعدة يمكن أن يستخدمها فى موضوعه.

How to write a paragraph:

كيفية كتابة الفقرة الانشائية :

القواعد العامة لكتابة فقرة إنشائية :

1. اترك مسافة تعادل خمسة أحرف (تقريبًا ١ سم) فى السطر الأول فقط من الموضوع.
2. أن تبدأ كل جملة بحرف Capital.
3. أن تضع (.) واضحة فى نهاية كل جملة.
4. اتبع كل علامات الترقيم.
5. عليك باستخدام الجمل البسيطة وأن يكون لكل جملة معنى واضح.
6. استخدم القواعد بالشكل الصحيح.

Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below.

How to be healthy

- fruit
- water
- sports

It's important to stay healthy. I eat fruit and vegetables. I drink a lot of water. I play sports to be healthy.

.....

.....

Scanned with CamScanner

Al-Azhar Al Sharif – Exam Specifications for Primary Four
مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية للصف الرابع الابتدائى - طلاب الأزهر الشريف

1 Listen and choose the correct answer. استمع جيدًا ثم اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

Pupils are asked to listen to a text of about three or four sentences. Three multiple-choice items are given. Pupils are asked to choose the correct answers.

يطلب من التلاميذ الاستماع إلى نص يتكون من حوالى ثلاث أو أربع جمل. ثم تقدم لهم ثلاثة أسئلة اختيار من متعدد، ويُطلب منهم اختيار الإجابات المناسبة.

2 Read and complete the dialog. اقرأ المحادثة وأكملها بالكلمات المناسبة.

Four words are given. Pupils are asked to complete the dialog with these words.

يطلب من التلاميذ إكمال المحادثة باستخدام أربع كلمات معطاه.

3 Choose the correct answer. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

Four multiple-choice items (two for vocabulary and two for grammar) are given. Pupils are asked to choose the correct answer.

تُعطى أربعة أسئلة اختيار من متعدد (اثنان للمفردات، واثنان للقواعد) ويُطلب من التلاميذ اختيار الإجابة الصحيحة.

4 Read and correct the underlined mistakes. اقرأ الجمل وصحح الأخطاء التى تحتها خط.

Pupils are asked to read and correct four underlined mistakes.

يُطلب من التلاميذ قراءة أربع جمل وتصحيح الخطأ الذى تحته خط فى كل جملة.

5 Read the following passage, then answer the questions. اقرأ القطعة ثم أجب عن الأسئلة.

A short text is given. Pupils are asked to read it and answer the questions. (Two true or false questions and three multiple-choice questions).

يُعطى التلاميذ نص قصير، ويطلب منهم قراءته ثم الإجابة عن الأسئلة (سؤالان صح أم خطأ وثلاثة أسئلة اختيار من متعدد).

6 Write a short paragraph / story / an e-mail. اكتب فقرة قصيرة أو قصة أو بريدًا إلكترونيًا.

Pupils are asked to write a paragraph or an e-mail of four sentences based on the material in the Set Books. Four key words are given and students are asked to use them to write the sentences.

يُطلب من التلاميذ كتابة فقرة أو بريد إلكترونى مكوّن من أربع جمل طبقًا للمحتوى الوارد فى الكتب الدراسية. وتُعطى لهم أربع كلمات مفتاحية، ويطلب منهم استخدامها فى كتابة الجمل.

Scanned with CamScanner

تنويه
- علامة SB تشير إلى تدريبات كتاب الطالب
- علامة AB تشير إلى تدريبات كتاب التقييمات

UNIT 1

The Five Senses

الحـواس الخـمـس

Learning Outcomes

Listening
- Identify vocabulary related to the five senses
- Answer comprehension questions in a listening dialog
- Recognize short and long vowels as in "pen" and "feed"

- يتعرف على مفردات متعلقة بالحواس الخمس
- يجيب أسئلة فهم فى محادثة سماعية
- يتعرف على الحروف المتحركة القصيرة والحروف الممدودة مثل "pen" و "feed"

Reading
- Answer questions about healthy habits
- Identify the setting and characters
- Order daily events using sequence words

- يجيب أسئلة عن العادات الصحية
- يتعرف على مكان وزمان وشخصيات القصة
- يرتب أحداث يومية باستخدام كلمات التسلسل والتتابع

Speaking
- Ask and answer questions about the importance of senses
- Talk about health habits in pairs
- Deliver a presentation on healthy eating habits

- يسأل ويجيب عن أهمية الحواس
- يتحدث عن العادات الصحية فى ثنائيات
- يقدم عرض تقديمى عن العادات الصحية لتناول الطعام

Writing
- Use the present simple tense to write meaningf sentences
- Write a daily routine usin sequence words
- Plan a presentation on healthy eating habits

ستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط لكتابة مل ذات معنى
تب روتين يومى باستخدام كلمات تسلسل والتتابع
خطط لعرض تقديمى عن العادات غذائية الصحية

Scanned with CamScanner

LESSON 1

What are the Five Senses ?

How many senses do you have ?

كم عدد الحواس لدينا ؟

I Vocabulary

قاموس المعاصر الناطق

We have five senses.

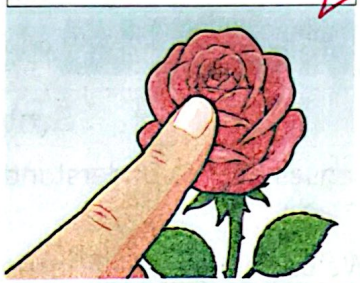
Key vocabulary المفردات اللغوية الأساسية موضع الامتحان [كما وردت في كتاب الطالب]

Our Senses حواسنا

taste
حاسة التذوق

We taste with our tongue.
نتذوق بلساننا.

touch
حاسة اللمس



We touch with our hands.
نلمس بأيدينا.

hearing
حاسة السمع

We hear with our ears.
نسمع بآذاننا.

sight
حاسة الإبصار

We see with our eyes.
نرى بأعيننا.

smell
حاسة الشم

We smell with our nose.
نشم بأنفنا.

fire	حريق / نار	smoke	دخان	voices	أصوات [بشرية]	tongue	لسان

Extra vocabulary المفردات اللغوية المساعدة في التعامل مع الورقة الامتحانية

soft	ناعم / لين	butterflies	فراشات	excellent	رائع / ممتاز
colorful	ملون	hard	صلب / خشن	loud noise	ضوضاء صاخبة

Scanned with CamScanner

• Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular			Irregular		
Present		Past	Present		Past
use	يستخدم	used	hear	يسمع	heard
taste	يتذوق	tasted	sing	يغنى	sang
touch	يلمس	touched	understand	يفهم	understood

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

learn about	يتعلم عن	What a beautiful day!	يا له من يوم جميل!
stay safe	يبقى آمنًا	talk about	يتحدث عن

Main points on listening and reading texts نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع و القراءة

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Our amazing senses	senses – understand	Senses help us understand the world around us. تساعدنا الحواس على فهم العالم من حولنا.
	hearing – singing	We use our sense of hearing to hear birds singing. نستخدم حاسة السمع لسماع تغريد الطيور.
	stay safe	Senses help us stay safe. تساعدنا الحواس على البقاء امنين.
	smoke – fire	If we smell smoke, we know there's a fire. إذا قمنا بشم رائحة الدخان نعرف أن هناك حريق.

Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

▸ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.** اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات المعاصر

1. I can hear a loud ..... in the street.
   a. noise b. smoke c. color d. shape
2. Our amazing senses help us stay ..... .
   a. busy b. safe c. far d. slow
3. Butterflies are ..... . They have many bright colors.
   a. delicious b. hard c. colorful d. scary
4. Can I ..... this red flower ?
   a. smell b. hear c. taste d. talk

Scanned with CamScanner

5. SB I ..... food with my tongue.
a. see b. hear c. taste d. touch

6. AB I can ..... soft things with my fingers.
a. smell b. hear c. see d. touch

7. AB Our ..... help us stay safe and learn. (الجيزة - العياط ٢٠٢٦)
a. books b. neighbors c. senses d. toys

8. I ..... with my eyes. (التقييمات الشهرية - أكتوبر / الشرقية - منيا القمح ٢٠٢٦)
a. hear b. taste c. smell d. see

9. AB If we smell smoke, we know there's a ..... . (القاهرة - المعادى ٢٠٢٦)
a. tree b. flower c. fire d. bird

II Listening and Reading

• **Listen and read.** استمع واقرأ.

Pop Quiz تدرب على قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع 05 min

Let's Talk About Our Senses
هيا بنا نتحدث عن حواسنا

Ms. Mona and the students are talking about the five senses.
الأستاذة منى والطلاب يتحدثون عن الحواس الخمس.

Good morning, children! What a **beautiful**[1] day in the school garden.
صباح الخير، يا أطفال! يا له من يوم رائع فى حديقة المدرسة.

[1] جميل
[2] يتعلم
[3] حواس

Good morning, Ms. Mona! What will we **learn**[2] today ?
صباح الخير، يا أستاذة منى! ماذا سنتعلم اليوم ؟

Today, we'll learn about our **amazing senses**[3].
اليوم، سنتعلم عن حواسنا الرائعة.

Scanned with CamScanner

يستطيع Can + inf

لا يستطيع Can't + inf

I Can See with my eyes.

What are senses, Ms. Mona ? ما هي الحواس، يا أستاذة منى ؟

Senses help us **understand**[4] the world around us - like sight, hearing, and smell.

تساعدنا الحواس على فهم العالم من حولنا، مثل حاسة الإبصار وحاسة السمع والشم.

Hear

I can hear birds singing! أستطيع أن أسمع تغريد الطيور !

Yes! That's your sense of hearing. What else can we use ?

حسنًا! هذه هي حاسة السمع. ماذا أيضًا يمكننا استخدامه ؟

I can smell the flowers and see the **colorful**[5] butterflies!

يمكنني شم الزهور و رؤية الفراشات الملونة !

Excellent, Salma ! Those are your senses of **smell**[6] and **sight**[7]. Senses also help us stay safe.

رائع، يا سلمى ! هذه هي حاسة الشم وحاسة الإبصار. تساعدنا الحواس أيضًا أن نبقى آمنين.

Ms. Mona, how do our senses help us stay **safe** ?

كيف تساعدنا الحواس أن نبقى آمنين، يا أستاذة منى ؟

That's a great question, Sami ! For example, if we smell smoke, we know there's a **fire**[8].

هذا سؤال رائع، يا سامى! على سبيل المثال، إذا قمنا بشم رائحة الدخان نعرف أن هناك حريق.

[4] يفهم
[5] ملون
[6] حاسة الشم
[7] حاسة الإبصار
[8] حريق

Determine the meaning of words.
وضح معاني الكلمات.

Learn 1. The opposite of the underlined word "**safe**" is "……".
a. healthy b. dangerous c. great d. huge

Practice 2. The underlined word "**amazing**" means "……".
a. wonderful b. tired c. free d. sad

III Listening script

• **Listen and learn.** استمع وتعلم.

1. I taste **delicious**[1] food with my tongue.
2. I touch soft and hard things with my hands.
3. I smell **flowers**[2] in the **garden**[3] with my nose.
4. I hear **music**[4] and voices with my ears.
5. I see colors and **shapes**[5] with my eyes.

[1] لذيذ الطعم
[2] زهور
[3] الحديقة
[4] الموسيقى
[5] أشكال

Scanned with CamScanner

EL-MOASSER Exercises تدريبات المعاصر

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False. استمع إلى معلمك واكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ.

1. Ms. Mona is our math teacher. ☐
2. We will learn about our houses today. ☐
3. Senses help us understand the world around us. ☐
4. Our senses are like sight, hearing and smell. ☐

2 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص واجب عن الاسئلة.

The five senses help us understand the world around us. We see shapes, colors and people with our eyes. We use our nose to smell the beautiful flowers. With our hands, we can touch things. We hear the birds singing with our ears. Our tongue lets us taste delicious food. Our senses help us stay safe. If we smell smoke, we know there's a fire.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. We use our ..... to see shapes and colors.
   a. eyes b. nose c. ears d. tongue
2. The text is about our ..... .
   a. school b. trash c. food d. senses

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What do the five senses help us do?
   .....
4. Which sense helps us smell flowers?
   ..... with nose ..... smell .....
5. which body part do we use to taste food?
   ..... with My tongue .....

3 Punctuate the following. ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى.

1. the senses help us learn about the world
   ..... T .....
2. what will we learn today
   ..... W ? .....

Scanned with CamScanner

General Exercises On Lesson 1

نصوص الاستماع والتقييمات في نهاية الكتاب

SB, AB & Previous Exams

تدريبات كتاب الطالب والتقييمات والاختبارات السابقة

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. You use your sense of ..... to listen to music. [المنيا - المنيا ٢٠٢٦]
   a. smell b. sight c. hearing d. touch
2. There is a ..... . Look at the dark smoke. [القاهرة - السيدة زينب ٢٠٢٦]
   a. fire b. noise c. match d. rain
3. This soup is hot; it hurts my ..... . [الجيزة - البدرشين ٢٠٢٦]
   a. tongue b. nose c. neck d. feet
4. SB ..... a beautiful day in the school garden! [كفر الشيخ - دسوق ٢٠٢٦]
   a. Where b. What c. Which d. Who
5. SB It's important to learn ..... the five senses.
   a. off b. in c. to d. about
6. SB I hear ..... my ears.
   a. on b. with c. of d. off

2 AB Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

flowers – butterflies – hear – see – smells

Samir can hear the birds in the garden. He sees (1) ..... flying near the flowers. He can (2) ..... their beautiful wings. His sister smells the sweet (3) ..... in the air. Birds sing loudly, so she can (4) ..... them in the tree.

3 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below.

اكتب فقرة إنشائية مكونة من أربعة (٤) جمل مستخدمًا الكلمات التالية.

Our senses مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Guiding words :

• hear • smell • safe

We have five senses. I can hear with my ear. I smell with my nose. I can touch with my hand. I can see with my eyes. I can taste with my tongue. our senses helps us stay safe. [الإسكندرية - برج العرب ٢٠٢٦]

Scanned with CamScanner

LESSON 2

Healthy Habits

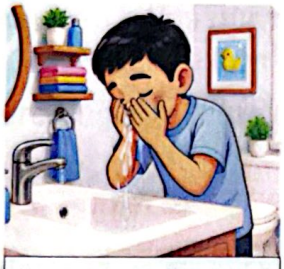
I Vocabulary

قاموس المعاصر الناطق

Key vocabulary المفردات اللغوية الأساسية موضع الامتحان [كما وردت فى كتاب الطالب]

Healthy habits عادات صحية

brush teeth
يغسل الأسنان



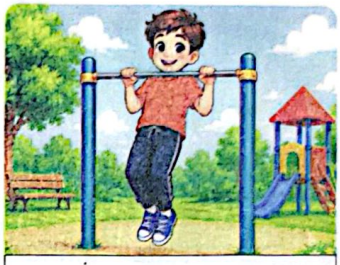
wash face
يغسل الوجه

wake up early
يستيقظ مبكرًا

play sports
يلعب رياضة

drink plenty of water
يشرب الكثير من المياه

take a shower
يستحم



do exercises
يتدرب / يتمرن

break time	وقت الفسحة	energy	طاقة	sharp	يقظ / منتبه

Extra vocabulary المفردات اللغوية المساعدة فى التعامل مع الورقة الامتحانية

strong	قوى	brown bread	خبز القمح [البلدى]	orange juice	عصير برتقال
mind	عقل	vitamins	فيتامينات	vegetables	خضروات
fresh	طازج	sweets	حلوى	simple	بسيط

• Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular			Irregular		
Present		Past	Present		Past
follow	يتبع	followed	drink	يشرب	drank
enjoy	يستمتع بـ	enjoyed	grow	يزرع	grew
			sleep	ينام	slept
			take	يأخذ	took

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

a 10-year-old girl	فتاة عمرها عشر سنوات	getting enough sleep	الحصول على قدر كاف من النوم
for breakfast	فى وجبة الإفطار	make friends	يكوّن صداقات
between classes	بين الحصص الدراسية	at night	ليلًا
do well	ينجح / يؤدى جيدًا		
stay sharp	يكون يقظ / منتبهًا		

Main points on listening and reading texts نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع و القراءة

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
My healthy day	follow - strong	Sarah follows good habits to stay strong and healthy. تتبع سارة عادات جيدة لتبقى قوية وبصحة جيدة.
	teeth - face	Sarah brushes her teeth and washes her face. تغسل سارة أسنانها ووجهها.
	plenty of water	Sarah drinks plenty of water between classes. تشرب سارة الكثير من الماء بين الحصص.
	fruits - dinner	Sarah eats lots of vegetables and fruits for dinner. تأكل سارة الكثير من الخضروات والفواكه على العشاء.
	habits - well	Sarah's healthy habits help her feel good and do well at school. عادات سارة الصحية تساعدها على الشعور بالراحة والتفوق فى المدرسة.

Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

▸ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات المعاصر

1. He ..... his teeth twice a day.
   a. gives b. cooks c. brushes d. exercises
2. Healthy food gives us ..... .
   a. energy b. sweets c. time d. habits

Scanned with CamScanner

3. We play sports during ..... time at school.
a. study b. class c. break d. reading

4. They ..... fresh fruits and vegetables in the garden.
a. stay b. grow c. learn d. wake

5. When you are healthy, you ..... well at school.
a. brush b. do c. carry d. drink

SB, AB & Previous Exams تدريبات كتاب الطالب والتقييمات والاختبارات السابقة

6. It's important to ..... good habits every day to stay strong.
a. eat b. follow c. help d. drink
[التقييمات الشهرية - أكتوبر / الجيزة - الشيخ زايد ٢٠٢٦]

7. SB Getting enough sleep helps our mind stay ..... .
a. sharp b. weak c. lazy d. busy

8. Sleeping early, exercising, and eating fresh vegetables are from my healthy ..... .
[القاهرة - ١٥ مايو ٢٠٢٦]
a. habits b. subjects c. senses d. stories

9. I do some ..... at the gym every day. [التقييمات الشهرية - أكتوبر / الشرقية - هيا ٢٠٢٦]
a. studies b. exercises c. meals d. foods

10. AB She ..... vitamins every morning.
a. touches b. takes c. hears d. helps

II Listening and Reading

Pop Quiz تدرب على قطع الفهم ولصوص الاستماع — 05 min

• **Listen and read.** استمع واقرأ.

My Healthy Day يومى الصحى

Sarah is a healthy 10-year-old girl. She follows good habits every day to stay strong and healthy.

In the morning, Sarah wakes up early at 6:00 a.m. She brushes her teeth and washes her face. Next, she does some simple exercises in the garden.

For breakfast, Sarah eats healthy food. She drinks orange juice and eats eggs and brown bread. These foods give her energy for the day.

At school, Sarah drinks plenty of water between classes. She plays sports with her friends during break time.

Scanned with CamScanner

In the afternoon, Sarah does her homework first. After that, she helps her mother in the garden. They grow fresh vegetables together.

For dinner, Sarah eats lots of vegetables and fruits. These give her important vitamins. She doesn't eat too many sweets.

In the evening, Sarah takes a shower and brushes her teeth again. She goes to bed early at 8:30 p.m. She sleeps for 9 hours every night. Getting enough sleep helps her body stay healthy and her mind stay sharp.

Sarah's healthy habits help her feel good and do well at school. She has lots of energy to learn, play, and enjoy her day!

سارة فتاة تتمتع بصحة جيدة تبلغ من العمر ١٠ سنوات. إنها تتبع عادات جيدة كل يوم لتبقى قوية وصحية. فى الصباح، تستيقظ سارة مبكرًا فى الساعة السادسة صباحًا. تغسل أسنانها بالفرشاة وتغسل وجهها. ثم تقوم ببعض التمارين الرياضية البسيطة فى الحديقة.

فى وجبة الإفطار، تأكل سارة طعامًا صحيًا. تشرب عصير البرتقال، وتتناول البيض وخبز القمح الكامل (الخبز البنى). هذه الأطعمة تمنحها الطاقة طوال اليوم. فى المدرسة، تشرب سارة الكثير من الماء بين الحصص الدراسية. وتلعب الرياضة مع أصدقائها أثناء فترة الاستراحة.

فى فترة بعد الظهر، تقوم سارة بأداء واجباتها المدرسية أولًا. بعد ذلك، تساعد والدتها فى الحديقة. يزرعون معًا الخضروات الطازجة.

وفى وجبة العشاء، تأكل سارة الكثير من الخضروات والفواكه والتى تمنحها فيتامينات هامة. لا تأكل سارة الكثير من الحلوى.

فى المساء، تأخذ سارة دشًا وتغسل أسنانها مرة أخرى. تذهب إلى النوم مبكرًا فى الساعة ٨:٣٠ مساءً، فهى تنام لمدة تسع ساعات كل ليلة. يساعد الحصول على قدر كافى من النوم جسمها على البقاء بصحة جيدة، ويساعد عقلها على أن يكون يقظًا. عادات سارة الصحية تساعدها على الشعور بالراحة والنجاح فى المدرسة. مما يجعلها تتمتع بالكثير من الطاقة لتتعلم وتلعب وتستمتع بيومها !

Demonstrate understanding of specific details.
وضح فهمك للتفاصيل المحددة.

Learn 1. Sarah does exercises in the ..... .
a. room (b. garden) c. school d. library

Practice 2. For breakfast, Sarah drinks ..... .
a. tea b. orange juice c. milk d. coffee

Think

. **Why is a good night's sleep important to us ?** - لماذا النوم الجيد فى الليل مهم لنا ؟

Scanned with CamScanner

III Language in use

The Present Simple Tense زمن المضارع البسيط

NoteBook

Usage : الاستخدام

- We use the present simple tense to talk about daily habits and routines.
- نستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط للتحدث عن العادات اليومية والروتين.

Formation : التكوين

Affirmative Statements الجمل الخبرية المثبتة

[inf. مصدر الفعل]

Subject الفاعل	Verb	Rest of the sentence تكملة الجملة
I / You / We / They / اسم جمع	eat	lunch at home every day.
He / She / It / اسم مفرد	eats	

With "he, she and it", we add "-s/-es/-ies"

Note: لاحظ أن

١. يضاف لمعظم الأفعال [s] مع الفاعل المفرد الغائب [He / She / It]:

ex: - He plays football every day.

٢. يضاف للفعل [es] مع الفاعل المفرد الغائب [He / She / It]

إذا كان منتهيًا بـ [x , o , sh , ch , ss] :

ex: - My brother watches TV after lunch.

٣. يضاف للفعل [ies] مع الفاعل المفرد الغائب [He / She / It]

إذا كان منتهيًا بـ [y] مسبوقة بحرف ساكن ويحذف حرف [y] :

ex: - My sister studies English every day.

Remember تذكر

Verb to [be]

Subject	"Be"
I	am ....
He / She / It / اسم مفرد	is ....
You / We / They / اسم جمع	are ....

- I'm 10 years old.
- He is happy.
- They are cute.

Scanned with CamScanner

Pop Quiz on Language in use

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات المعاصر

1. They ..... their cars every Friday.
   a. washes b. wash c. washing d. washed
2. The girls ..... their mother every day.
   a. helps b. helping c. help d. is helping
3. Laila ..... plenty of water every morning.
   a. drink b. drinks c. to drink d. drinking
4. I ..... early every night.
   a. sleep b. sleeping c. sleeps d. slept

SB, AB & Previous Exams تدريبات كتاب الطالب والتقييمات والاختبارات السابقة

5. SB My brother ..... football every day.
   a. play b. plays c. played d. playing
6. Children ..... to school early every day.
   a. goes b. go c. going d. to go

[التقييمات الشهرية - أكتوبر / الشرقية - مشتول السوق ٢٠٢٦]

7. AB She ..... her backpack every day.
   a. carries b. carry c. carried d. carrying

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets. اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات بين الأقواس.

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات المعاصر

1. She ..... **(do)** her homework in the afternoon.
2. He ..... **(wake)** up at 6:30 a.m.
3. Mariam ..... **(are)** my best friend.
4. They ..... **(is)** healthy and strong.
5. Yara and Rana ..... **(helps)** their mother in the kitchen.
6. Healthy foods ..... **(gives)** me energy.
7. Farmers ..... **(grows)** many crops in Egypt.

SB, AB & Previous Exams تدريبات كتاب الطالب والتقييمات والاختبارات السابقة

8. SB Some children ..... **(plays)** sports after school.
9. SB The nurse ..... **(help)** sick people. [الشرقية - بلبيس ٢٠٢٦]
10. AB We ..... **(washes)** our hands before eating.
11. AB He ..... **(read)** stories in English class. [المنيا - المنيا ٢٠٢٦]
12. SB She ..... **(sleep)** for 9 hours every night.
13. I ..... **(visits)** the library every week. [التقييمات الشهرية - اكتوبر / القاهرة - المعادى ٢٠٢٦]
14. They ..... **(eating)** a healthy breakfast every day. [الجيزة - الدقى ٢٠٢٦]

Scanned with CamScanner

General Exercises On Lesson 2

نصوص الاستماع والتقييمات في نهاية الكتاب

EL-MOASSER Exercises تدريبات المعاصر

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False. استمع إلى معلمك واكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ.

1. Mazen is a 7-year-old boy. ☐
2. He follows healthy habits. ☐
3. Mazen gets enough food at night. ☐
4. At the park, he does some exercises every morning. ☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. A clever boy has a sharp ..... .
   a. body b. mind c. sleep d. food
2. She ..... her grandparents every month.
   a. visited b. visiting c. visits d. visit
3. Her ..... habits help her feel good.
   a. unhealthy b. slow c. healthy d. difficult
4. We ..... some exercises in the morning.
   a. does b. do c. doing d. done
5. It's important to ..... plenty of water.
   a. drink b. brush c. follow d. wash
6. Amir ..... a shower every day.
   a. took b. takes c. taking d. take

3 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص واجب عن الاسئلة.

Sarah is a healthy 10-year-old girl. She follows good habits every day to stay strong and healthy. In the morning, Sarah wakes up early at 6:00 a.m. She brushes her teeth and washes her face. After that, she does some simple exercises in the garden.

For breakfast, Sarah eats healthy food. She drinks orange juice and eats eggs and brown bread. These foods give her energy for the day.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. This text is about Sarah's ..... .
   a. healthy habits b. favorite clothes c. favorite story d. bedroom
2. The opposite of the underlined word "**early**" is "..... " .
   a. strong b. late c. sharp d. simple

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What time does Sarah wake up ?
   .....
4. How old is Sarah ?
   .....
5. What does Sarah eat for breakfast ?
   .....

Scanned with CamScanner

General Exercises — On Lesson 2

نصوص الاستماع والتقييمات في نهاية الكتاب

SB, AB & Previous Exams

تدريبات كتاب الطالب والتقييمات والاختبارات السابقة

1 AB **Read and complete the text with the words in the box.**

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

friends – sharp – breakfast – plays – sleeps

Shady eats a good breakfast every morning to have energy. At school, he (1) ..... with his (2) ..... during break time. He (3) ..... for nine hours every night to keep his mind (4) ..... and his body healthy.

2 **Punctuate the following.**

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى.

1. SB why does Sarah eat healthy food

.....

2. she drinks orange juice [الجيزة - أوسيم ٢٠٢٦]

.....

3 **Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets**

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات بين الأقواس.

1. My grandfather ..... **(drink)** coffee in the morning.
2. Salma and I ..... **(takes)** the school bus every morning.
3. She ..... **(make)** a cake every day.
4. Tourists often ..... **(rides)** camels near Giza. [الشرقية - الصالحية ٢٠٢٦]

4 AB **Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below**

اكتب فقرة إنشائية مكونة من أربعة (٤) جمل مستخدمًا الكلمات التالية.

Your healthy habits مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Guiding words :

• follow • wake up • exercise

.....

.....

.....

Scanned with CamScanner

Accumulative Dictation

إملاء تراكمى على الدروس

اختبار لقياس وتقييم مدى استيعاب الطالب للمفردات اللغوية

LESSON 1

.....	لسان	touch	.....
.....	حاسة الشم	taste	.....
.....	حريق / نار	hearing	.....

LESSON 2

.....	يغسل الأسنان	play sports	.....
.....	يستحم	drink plenty of water	.....
.....	طاقة	break time	.....

LESSONS 1&2

تدريب تراكمى على المفردات اللغوية للدروس الأول والثانى

1. Complete the following sentences using the words from the box.

voices - wake - face - senses

1. I wash my ..... in the morning.
2. I ..... up early.
3. We have five amazing ..... .
4. I hear music and ..... with my ears.

2. Read and write

• Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Present		Past	Present		Past
.....	ينام	slept	grow	يزرع	.....
follow	يتبع	.....	.....	يفهم	understood
.....	يأخذ	took	sing	يغنى	.....
hear	يسمع	.....	.....	يستخدم	used

Scanned with CamScanner

LESSON 3

Story Time : Goha's Great Meal

I Vocabulary

قاموس المعاصر الناطق

Key vocabulary المفردات اللغوية الأساسية موضع الامتحان [كما وردت فى كتاب الطالب]

coins	عملات معدنية	market	السوق	smell	رائحة / يشم
owner	مالك	hungry	جائع	restaurant	مطعم
jingling	صوت رنين خفيف	greedy	طماع / جشع	deep breath	نفس عميق

Extra vocabulary المفردات اللغوية المساعدة فى التعامل مع الورقة الامتحانية

soup	حساء [شوربة]	light	خفيف	suddenly	فجأة
yummy	لذيذ	wonderful	رائع	pocket	جيب

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present		Past
invite	يدعو	invited
offer	يعرض	offered

Irregular

Present		Past
say	يقول	said
pay for	يدفع [ثمن]	paid for
shake	يهز / يهتز	shook

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

impressed by	منبهر بـ	walk through	يتجول فى
for free	مجانًا	laugh at	يضحك على
take out .... from	يخرج .... من	share with	يشارك مع
come inside	تفضل بالدخول	taste better	مذاقه أفضل

Study these definitions ادرس تلك التعريفات

Word الكلمة	Definition التعريف	
owner	someone who has something	شخص يمتلك شيئًا
jingling	a light, ringing sound	صوت رنين خفيف
share	to give some of what you have to others	إعطاء جزء مما تملكه للآخرين
hungry	wanting to eat	الشعور برغبة فى تناول الطعام
greedy	always wanting more than what is needed	الرغبة فى الحصول على أكثر مما تحتاج

Scanned with CamScanner

Main points on listening and reading texts نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع و القراءة

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Goha's Great Meal	hungry – money	Goha was hungry, but he didn't have enough money to buy food. كان جحا جائعًا، لكنه لم يكن يملك مالًا كافيًا لشراء الطعام.
	smell – soup	He smelled delicious soup from a restaurant. شم جحا رائحة شوربة لذيذه من أحد المطاعم.
	sit outside	He sat outside the restaurant, enjoying the smell of the soup. جلس جحا خارج المطعم مستمتعًا برائحة الشوربة.
	owner – pay	The owner asked Goha to pay for the smell. طلب صاحب المطعم من جحا أن يدفع ثمن الرائحة.
	offer – coins	Goha offered to pay for the smell with the sound of his coins. عرض جحا أن يدفع ثمن الرائحة بصوت العملات المعدنية.
	laugh – share	The owner laughed and invited Goha in the restaurant to share the soup. ضحك صاحب المطعم ودعا جحا إلى المطعم ليشاركة الشوربة.

Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

▸ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.** اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات المعاصر

1. I want to have a sandwich. I'm really ..... .
   a. free b. hungry c. strong d. thirsty
2. There's a ..... of perfume in the air.
   a. smell b. taste c. voice d. sound
3. Don't be ..... . Share your toys with your friends.
   a. greedy b. fast c. tall d. friendly

SB, AB & Previous Exams تدريبات كتاب الطالب والتقييمات والاختبارات السابقة

4. SB A/An ..... means someone who has something.
   a. character b. owner c. coach d. teacher
5. SB "....." means a light, ringing sound.
   a. Dark b. Taste c. Jingling d. Noise
6. AB The yummy smell came from a ..... nearby.
   a. coin b. TV c. restaurant d. soup
7. We can't eat in the restaurant for free, we must ..... for our food.
   a. taste b. laugh c. stop d. pay

[التقييمات الشهرية - أكتوبر / القاهرة - الشروق ٢٠٢٦]

Scanned with CamScanner

II Listening and Reading

• **Look, read and learn.** اقرأ وتعلم.

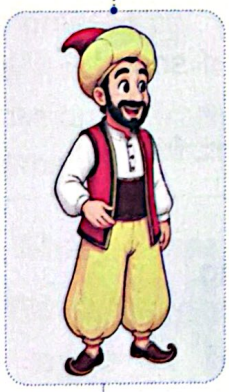
The story elements are : عناصر القصة هى :

Characters
- The people and animals in a story
- الشخصيات : الأشخاص والحيوانات فى القصة

Setting
- The time and place of a story
- زمان ومكان القصة

Plot الحبكة
- **Beginning** ⋯▸ Meet the people /Know the place
  البداية : مقابلة الأشخاص والتعرف على المكان
- **Problem** ⋯▸ Something goes wrong
  المشكلة : حدوث خطأ ما
- **Middle** ⋯▸ The character tries to fix it
  المنتصف : يقوم الأشخاص بمحاولة إصلاح هذا الخطأ
- **Ending** ⋯▸ The problem is solved
  نهاية القصة : يتم فيها حل المشكلة

The characters of the story



Goha [The main character]

the owner of the restaurant

The setting of the story

Time

in the morning

Place

outside the restaurant

الشخصية الرئيسية

Scanned with CamScanner

Goha's Great Meal
وجبة جحا العظيمة

The Beginning

One morning, Goha was walking through the market. He was very hungry, but didn't have enough **money**[1] to buy food. Suddenly, he smelled something wonderful. The **yummy**[2] smell was coming from a **restaurant's window**[3]. Goha stopped and sat outside the restaurant. He closed his eyes and took a deep breath. "Ah," he said. "This **wonderful**[4] smell makes me feel **less hungry**[5] !"

The Middle

The restaurant owner saw Goha and asked, "What are you doing ?"

Goha said, "I'm enjoying the smell of your delicious soup."

The owner was greedy. He said, "You can't smell the soup for free ! You must pay for it!"

Goha **thought for a moment**[6]. Then, he took out a few coins from his pocket. He shook them in his hand, and they made a jingling sound. "Here," said Goha. "If you want money for the smell of your soup, then you can take the **sound of my coins**[7]."

[1] مال / نقود
[2] لذيذ
[3] نافذة المطعم
[4] رائع
[5] اقل جوعًا
[6] فكر للحظة
[7] صوت العملات المعدنية
[8] تفضل بالدخول

The End

The owner laughed at Goha's clever answer. "**Come inside,**[8]" he said. "Let's share this soup. Good food tastes better when shared with others !"

فى صباح أحد الأيام، كان جحا يسير فى السوق. كان جائعًا جدًا لكنه لم يكن يملك مالاً كافيًا لشراء الطعام. فجأة، شم رائحة شيء رائع. الرائحة اللذيذة كانت تأتى من شباك مطعم. توقف جحا وجلس خارج المطعم. أغلق عينيه وأخذ نفساً عميقاً وقال: «آه، هذه الرائحة الرائعة تجعلنى أشعر بجوع أقل!"

رأى صاحب المطعم جحا وسأله : «ماذا تفعل؟» قال جحا : "أنا أستمتع برائحة الحساء اللذيذة." صاحب المطعم كان طماعًا وقال : "لا يمكنك الاستمتاع بالرائحة مجانًا ! يجب أن تدفع مقابل ذلك!" فكر جحا للحظة ثم أخرج بعض العملات المعدنية القليلة من جيبه. وهزّها فى يده لتُصدر صوتًا رنانًا، وقال جحا: "ها هى، إذا أردت المال مقابل رائحة الحساء، إذًا يمكنك أن تأخذ صوت نقودى."

ضحك صاحب المطعم من رد جحا الذكى وقال : "تفضل بالدخول لنتشارك هذا الحساء معًا. الطعام الجيد يكون ألذ عند مشاركته مع الآخرين!"

The moral lesson of the story : الدرس المستفاد من القصة:

It's good to share things with others.

Scanned with CamScanner

III Pronunciation

• Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.

Short and Long Vowels

Short vowels

/ɑ:/ , / æ / , /e/

• The short vowel (o) makes the sound /ɑ:/

pot إناء

hot حار

• The short vowel (a) makes the sound /æ/

cat قطة

hat قبعة

rat فأر

• The short vowel (e) makes the sound /e/

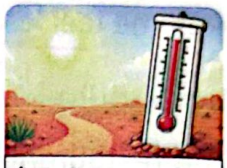
pen قلم

Long vowels

/i :/ , /eI/ , / oʊ /

• The long vowel (e) makes the sound /i:/

feed يطعم



heat حرارة

bean فول

• The long vowel (a) makes the sound /eI/

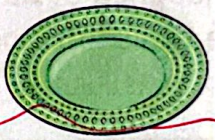


plate طبق

• The long vowel (o) makes the sound /oʊ/

home منزل

Scanned with CamScanner

Note: لاحظ

- Short vowel sounds are pronounced quickly and not pronounced as their letter name, like the "a" in "hat".

الأصوات القصيرة تنطق بسرعة ولا تنطق مثل أسماء الحروف مثل «a» فى كلمة «hat».

- Long vowel sounds are pronounced the same way as their letter name, like the "a" in "plate".

الأصوات الممدودة تنطق مثل أسماء الحروف مثل الصوت «a» فى كلمة «plate».

Pop Quiz on Pronunciation

1 Read and sort. اقرأ وصنّف.

pot - feed - home - plate - hat - pen

Short vowels	Long vowels
pot	Feed
hat	home
pen	Plate

2 Read and complete. اقرأ وأكمل.

feed - home - plate - heat

1. Hany went ..... and changed into his best clothes.
2. The children ..... their cat in the morning.
3. I washed the ..... after dinner.

Scanned with CamScanner

General Exercises On Lesson 3

نصوص الاستماع والتقييمات في نهاية الكتاب

EL-MOASSER Exercises تدريبات المعاصر

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Omar ..... to eat. He is hungry.
   a. don't want b. to want c. want d. wants
2. My father ..... to work every day.
   a. to drive b. drive c. drives d. driving
3. We heard a ..... sound when he shook his coins.
   a. jingling b. shouting c. crying d. crashing
4. Nora ..... her mom every Friday.
   a. help b. helps c. helped d. helping
5. ..... people always want more than what is needed.
   a. Helpful b. Funny c. Greedy d. Clever
6. It's good to ..... food with friends.
   a. share b. brush c. play d. wash

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات بين الأقواس.

A

1. She wears (wear) her uniform to school every day.
2. He washes (wash) his car on weekends.
3. We help (helps) mom clean our apartment.
4. She lives (live) in Alexandria.

B

1. They visit (visits) their grandparents every month.
2. The baby cries (cry) when he is hungry.
3. You spend (spends) your money on sweets.
4. The restaurant opens (open) at 9 a.m.

3 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below.

اكتب فقرة إنشائية مكونة من أربعة (٤) جمل مستخدمًا الكلمات التالية.

"Sharing with others" مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Guiding words :

- food
- help
- happy

.....

.....

Scanned with CamScanner

SB, AB & Previous Exams

تدريبات كتاب الطالب والتقييمات والاختبارات السابقة

1 AB Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

اقرأ واكمل النص بكلمات من المربع

coins - restaurant - owner - smelled - money

Goha walked to the market. He (1) ..... something delicious. He stopped near the (2) ..... window and closed his eyes. The smell made him feel full. When the (3) ..... came, Goha gave him the sound of (4) ..... instead of real money.

2 AB Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة.

Omar was walking home when he smelled soup from a restaurant. He didn't go in, but he stood there smiling. The owner said, "If you enjoy the smell, you must pay". Omar laughed and shook his coins. "This is the sound of my payment!" he said. The owner laughed, too.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Omar paid with the sound of ..... .
   a. laughter b. coins c. his voice d. shoes
2. The owner told Omar he must ..... .
   a. work b. eat c. pay d. leave

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Do you think Omar is clever ? Why / Why not ?
   Yes, Because he .....
4. How did the owner feel at the end ?
   .....
5. Summarize the text in one sentence.
   It's good to share things with others.

3 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى.

1. AB let's share this food [الغربية - سمنود ٢٠٢٦]
   .....
2. SB Why did goha sit outside the restaurant [البحيرة - المحمودية ٢٠٢٦]
   .....

Scanned with CamScanner

LESSONS 4&5

- Writing
- Think and Create

16, Aug

I Vocabulary

قاموس المعاصر الناطق

daily routine	روتين يومى	healthy	صحى
same	متشابه / نفس الشئ	get dressed	يرتدى
lunch	وجبة الغداء	breakfast	وجبة الإفطار
eating habits	عادات الأكل (الطعام)	snack	وجبة خفيفة
dinner	وجبة العشاء	including	متضمنًا / مشتملًا على

save

• Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

save

Regular			Irregular		
Present		Past	Present		Past
study	يدرس	studied	let	يدع/يسمح	let
prepare	يعد / يجهز	prepared	tell	يخبر	told

Main points on listening and reading texts نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع و القراءة

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
My healthy life	routine - important	Having a daily routine is important. من المهم ان يكون لديك روتين يومى.
	get dressed	I wash my face and get dressed for school. اغسل وجهى وارتدى ملابسى للذهاب إلى المدرسة.
	break time	During break time, I eat my healthy snack and drink water. ثناء وقت الاستراحة، أتناول وجبتى الخفيفة الصحية واشرب الماء.
	play - sports	I do my homework and play sports for one hour. ؤدى واجبى المنزلى وامارس الرياضة لمدة ساعة واحدة.
	dinner - evening	I take a shower and have dinner in the evening. سنحم واتناول العشاء فى المساء.

First,
Next,

Scanned with CamScanner

Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

▸ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.** اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات المعاصر

1. She got ..... at 7 : 00 to be ready for the party.
   a. dressed b. sleep c. exercise d. lost
2. You can have a ..... between breakfast and lunch.
   a. dinner b. color c. snack d. breath
3. The two pictures aren't different, they are the ..... .
   a. same b. strong c. late d. clever

SB, AB & Previous Exams تدريبات كتاب الطالب والتقييمات والاختبارات السابقة

4. SB I follow the same ..... every day.
   a. routine b. sense c. home d. sleep
5. I ..... useful subjects at school. (التقييمات الشهرية - أكتوبر / المنوفية - أشمون ٢٠٢٦)
   a. shake b. sit c. make d. study
6. AB Sleeping early keeps me ..... .
   a. unhealthy b. healthy c. late d. tired

II Listening and Reading

Pop Quiz تدرب على قطع الفهم ولصوص الاستماع

• **Look, read and learn.** انظر، اقرأ وتعلم.

My Healthy Life حياتى الصحية

Having a daily routine is important. Let me tell you about my healthy habits and how they help me stay **strong**.

Every day, I follow the same routine. First, I **wake up**[1] early at 6:00 a.m. and **brush my teeth**[2]. I **wash my face**[3] and get dressed for school. Next, I have a healthy breakfast , including **milk**[4] and fruit.

[1] يستيقظ [2] أغسل أسنانى بالفرشاة [3] اغسل وجهى [4] لبن

Scanned with CamScanner

⇒ A place where I study and play
" School.

Then, I go to school, where I study and play with my friends. During **break time**[5], I eat a **healthy** snack and drink water. After school, I have lunch with my family. After that, I do my homework and then play sports for one hour. In the evening, I **take a shower**[6] and have dinner. Finally, I go to bed at 9:00 p.m. because **sleeping early**[7] keeps me healthy.

[5] فسحة / فترة استراحة
[6] يستحم
[7] النوم مبكرًا

اتباع روتين يومى مهم. دعونى أخبركم عن عاداتى الصحية وكيف تساعدنى هذه العادات على البقاء قويًا. كل يوم، اتبع نفس الروتين. أولًا، استيقظ مبكرًا فى الساعة السادسة صباحًا وأغسل أسنانى بالفرشاة. اغسل وجهى وارتدى ملابسى للذهاب إلى المدرسة. بعد ذلك، أتناول فطورًا صحيًا يحتوى على الحليب والفواكه.

ثم أذهب إلى المدرسة حيث ادرس وألعب مع أصدقائى. فى وقت الاستراحة، أتناول وجبة صحية خفيفة وأشرب الماء. بعد المدرسة، أتناول الغداء مع عائلتى. ثم أقوم بواجباتى المدرسية وبعدها ألعب الرياضة لمدة ساعة.

فى المساء، استحم. وأتناول العشاء. وأخيرًا، أذهب إلى النوم فى الساعة التاسعة مساءً لأن النوم مبكرًا يساعدنى على البقاء بصحة جيدة.

Determine the meaning of words.
وضح معانى الكلمات.

Learn 1. The opposite of the underlined word "**healthy**" is "……".
a. unhealthy b. heavy c. colorful d. beautiful

Practice 2. The opposite of the underlined word "**strong**" is "……".
a. weak b. delicious c. boring d. sharp

III Writing Skill

للمزيد من إتقان المهارات اللغوية كراسة المعاصر للمهارات اللغوية فى نهاية الكتاب

1 Sequence words "for daily routine"

كلمات التسلسل والتتابع (للحديث عن الروتين اليومى)

Sequence words → help us show the order of actions or events.

كلمات التسلسل والتتابع ← هى كلمات تساعدنا على توضيح ترتيب الأحداث.

Sequence words → tell us what happens at the beginning, in the middle, and at the end.

كلمات التسلسل والتتابع ← تخبرنا عما يحدث فى البداية وفى المنتصف وفى النهاية.

Scanned with CamScanner

ex To talk about daily routine, we use :

عند الحديث عن الروتين اليومى، نستخدم

First,	أولًا	First, I wake up at 6:00 a.m. and brush my teeth.
Next,	التالى	Next, I have a healthy breakfast, including milk and fruit.
Then,	ثم	Then, I go to school, where I study and play with my friends.
After that,	بعد ذلك	After that, I do my homework and then play sports for one hour.
Finally,	أخيرًا	Finally, I go to bed at 9:00 p.m.

2 A presentation about healthy eating habits

عرض تقديمى عن عادات الطعام الصحية

To make a presentation, make sure that you : لعمل عرض تقديمى تأكد من :

- Speak clearly and slowly. التحدث بوضوح وبطء.
- Use clear headings. استخدام عناوين واضحة.
- Add pictures. إضافة الصور.
- Keep the text simple. الحفاظ على سهولة النص.
- Speak for 3 - 5 minutes. التحدث من ٣ - ٥ دقائق.

.....

Pop Quiz on Writing Skill

Write your daily routine using sequence words.

.....

.....

.....

.....

Scanned with CamScanner

General Exercises On Lessons 4 & 5

نصوص الاستماع والتقييمات في نهاية الكتاب

EL-MOASSER Exercises تدريبات المعاصر

1 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص واجب عن الاسئلة.

I am Lamees. Having a daily routine is important. I follow the same routine every day. First, I wake up at 7 a.m. I wash my face, brush my teeth and get dressed for school. Next, I have my healthy breakfast with my family. Then, I go to school. After school, I have lunch and do my homework. Finally, I go to bed early.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The main idea of the text is about "……" .
   a. Daily routine b. Jobs c. Sports d. Sleeping
2. The underlined word "early" is the opposite of "……" .
   a. near b. close c. late d. healthy

B. Answer the following questions.

3. When does Lamees wake up ?
   ……
4. What does Lamees do after school ?
   ……
5. Summarize the text in one sentence.
   ……

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.
اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات بين الأقواس.

1. I always ……eat…… (eats) breakfast at 7 o'clock.
2. Marwan ……plays…… (play) sports at the club.
3. I ……like…… (likes) my school.
4. They ……travel…… (travels) to Aswan by plane.

3 Punctuate the following. ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي.

1. after that she has a healthy lunch
   ……
2. do you eat healthy snacks
   ……

4 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below.
اكتب فقرة إنشائية مكونة من أربعة (٤) جمل مستخدمًا الكلمات التالية.

Your healthy routine

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Guiding words :

- important
- habits
- stay strong

……

……

NoteBook

UNIT 1

Scanned with CamScanner

General Exercises On Lessons 4 & 5

نصوص الاستماع والتقييمات في نهاية الكتاب

SB, AB & Previous Exams

تدريبات كتاب الطالب والتقييمات والاختبارات السابقة

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False. استمع إلى معلمك واكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ.

1. Noha is fit and healthy. ☐
2. Noha has many healthy habits. ☐
3. Noha wakes up very late. ☐
4. Noha has a healthy breakfast with her friends. ☐

[الأقصر - إسنا - ٢٠٢٦]

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. SB Having a daily routine is ..... . [السويس - شمال السويس ٢٠٢٦]
   a. bad b. unhealthy c. important d. unhappy
2. They ..... their bikes in the park. [الغربية - زفتى ٢٠٢٦]
   a. ride b. rides c. riding d. to ride
3. Fruit is my favorite healthy ..... . [قنا - دشنا ٢٠٢٦]
   a. soup b. routine c. subject d. snack
4. AB My sister and I ..... TV in the evening.
   a. watch b. watches c. watching d. watched
5. AB They ..... the books in the morning.
   a. to read b. read c. reading d. reads
6. SB I have a healthy ..... , including milk and fruit. [الفيوم - سنورس ٢٠٢٦]
   a. breakfast b. exercise c. book d. sport

3 AB Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

اقرأ واكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

routines - brushes - breakfast - helps - watches

My brother and I play football every day. He wakes up early and (1) ..... his teeth. Then, he eats (2) ..... . After school, he (3) ..... our father. We enjoy watching TV together at night. These are our daily habits and (4) ..... .

Scanned with CamScanner

Accumulative Dictation

إملاء تراكمى على الدروس

اختبار لقياس وتقييم مدى استيعاب الطالب للمفردات اللغوية

LESSON 3

.....	مالك	deep breath	.....
.....	جشع	coins	.....
.....	مطعم	soup	.....

LESSONS 4&5

.....	روتين يومى	including	.....
.....	وجبة خفيفة	eating habits	.....
.....	يرتدى	lunch	.....

LESSONS 3,4 &5

تدريب تراكمى على المفردات اللغوية للدروس الثالث والرابع والخامس

1. Complete the following sentences using the words from the box.

Jingling - share - healthy - owner

1. A/An owner is someone who has something.
2. Share is a light, ringing sound.
3. Eating fruits and vegetables keeps us healthy.
4. To Jingling means to give some of what you have to others.

2. Read and write.

• Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Present		Past	Present		Past
.....	يدفع (ثمن)	paid	study	يدرس	.....
shake	يهز / يهتز	.....	.....	يجهز	prepared
.....	يعرض	offered	let	يدع / يسمح	.....
invite	يدعو	.....	.....	يخبر	told

Scanned with CamScanner

Skills 1 Reading Comprehension

Identify the general idea of the text

تختبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مدى إتقانك لمهارة القراءة.

التحدى قد تجد صعوبة فى تحديد الفكرة العامة بسبب وجود عدة أفكار تم عرضها فى النص.

مفتاح الحل عند قراءة النص تجد أن كل الأفكار تدور حول موضوع واحد محدد هو (الفكرة الرئيسية / العامة) للنص.

1 Learn تعلم كيفية الإجابة.

Read and learn how to answer:

Senses are very important to us. Senses help us understand the world around us. We can taste delicious food with our tongue. We can touch soft and hard things with our hands. We can hear music and voices with our ears.

- This text is about "....." .

Or : The main / general idea of the text is about "....." .

Or : The text talks about " ....." .

Or : What's the main idea of the text ?

a. Our senses b. Soft things

c. Music d. Food

شرح الحل

بعد قراءة كل الجمل نلاحظ أنها تدور حول Our senses

2 Master اتقن طريقة حل السؤال (متبعًا الخطوة الأولى).

Read and answer the questions :

Every day, I follow the same routine. First, I wake up early at 6:00 a.m. and brush my teeth. I wash my face and get dressed for school. Next, I have a healthy breakfast , including milk and fruit. Then, I go to school, where I study and play with my friends. After school, I have lunch with my family. After that, I do my homework and then play sports for one hour. Finally, I go to bed at 9:00 p.m. because sleeping early keeps me healthy.

- This text is about "....." .

Or : The main / general idea of the text is about "....." .

Or : The text talks about "....." .

Or : What's the main idea of the text ?

a. My daily routine b. My favorite food

c. My town d. My family

Scanned with CamScanner

2 Review, Practice & Master
for Correction Notes

الهدف من هذا الجزء
- التأكيد على فهم الطالب للقواعد اللغوية.
- اكتساب الطالب مهارة التعامل مع سؤال تصحيح الخطأ.

Review راجع القاعدة وتأكد من فهمك

Affirmative statements in present simple	الجملة الخبرية المثبته في المضارع البسيط
• I/We / They/ You / اسم جمع + inf. مصدر الفعل	
• He/She/It / اسم مفرد + inf. + (s / es / ies)	

Practice تدرب على كيفية التعامل مع السؤال

Sentence	Correction	Reason
1 The boys ..... (playing) football every week.	play	مع الاسم الجمع نستخدم الفعل فى المصدر بدون إضافات فى المضارع البسيط
2 She ..... (go) to school on foot.	goes	نضيف "es" للفعل إذا انتهى بـ "o" مع الاسم المفرد فى زمن المضارع البسيط
3 He ..... (study) his lesson every day.	studies	إذا انتهى الفعل بـ "y" يسبقها حرف ساكن تحذف وتحول إلى "ies" إذا كان الاسم مفرد فى زمن المضارع البسيط
4 Dad ..... (read) a newspaper in the morning.	reads	نضيف للفعل "s" مع الاسم المفرد فى زمن المضارع البسيط

Master أتقن طريقة حل السؤال

Write the reason. معرفة الطالب لسبب الإجابة يؤكد استيعابه للقاعدة المطلوبة.

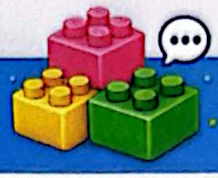
1 Sarah always ..... (do) exercises in the garden.	does	.....
2 I ..... (eats) breakfast with my family every day.	eat	.....
3 He ..... (wake) up early on Fridays.	wakes	.....
4 Children ..... (watches) TV in the evening.	watch	.....

Write the correction. اكتب التصحيح.

1 Adam ..... (go) to bed early at 9:00 p.m.	.....	نضيف للفعل (es) مع الاسم المفرد (Adam) فى المضارع البسيط
2 I ..... (uses) my nose to smell.	.....	مع الضمير (I) نستخدم الفعل فى المصدر فى زمن المضارع البسيط
3 My sister ..... (help) mom in the evening.	.....	يضاف للفعل (s) مع الاسم المفرد (My sister) فى زمن المضارع البسيط
4 Some children ..... (plays) sports after school.	.....	نستخدم الفعل بدون إضافات مع الاسم الجمع (Some children)

Scanned with CamScanner

3 Sentence Building



الهدف من هذا الجزء تعلم كيف تكون وترتب جمل وأسئلة.

١ الجملة الخبرية

1 Subject Detective

مين صاحب الفعل؟

ابحث عن الفاعل

أمثلة من الجمل:

1. He
   فاعل الجملة الأولى
2. I
   فاعل الجملة الرابعة

الفاعل هو الشخص أو الشيء الذي يقوم بالفعل.

1. brushes - He - every day - his teeth.
2. laughed at - The owner - answer - Goha's.
3. get - for - I - dressed - school.
4. see - eyes - I - with - my.
5. use - I - to smell - my nose.

	١ فاعل	٢ فعل	٣ باقي الجملة.
1.		brushes	
2.			
3.		get dressed	
4.			with my eyes.
5.	I		

2 Verb Hunter

بيعمل إيه؟

ابحث عن الفعل

أمثلة من الجمل:

1. get dressed
   فعل الجملة الثالثة
2. use
   فعل الجملة الخامسة

الفعل هو الحركة أو الحدث في الجملة.

٢ الجملة الاستفهامية

3 Helper Team

مين بيساعدنا؟

الأفعال المساعدة

Did/Will/Can

تستخدم مع:

I, you, we, they
he, she, it

الأفعال المساعدة تأتي قبل الفاعل في السؤال.

1. did - Why - sit - the restaurant - Goha - outside ?
2. senses - do - How many - have - we ?
3. can - What - Sami - hear ?
4. will - What - we - today - learn ?

	١ كلمة استفهام	٢ فعل مساعد	٣ فاعل	٤ فعل	٥ باقي السؤال؟
1.		did			
2.	How many senses				
3.					
4.					

4 The Wh-Team

نسأل ازاى؟

أدوات الاستفهام

- Why [لماذا]: للسؤال عن السبب.
- How many [كم العدد]: للسؤال عن العدد.

أداة الاستفهام تأتي دائمًا في بداية السؤال.

Scanned with CamScanner

4 Build Your Topic

اكتب موضوعك خطوة بخطوة

1. Word Bank

م بقراءة المفردات اللغوية وتعلم كيفية استخدامها فى جُمل.

▸ **Use the words in the table to make sentences.**

Subject	Verb	rest of the sentence
We	have	five senses.
I	smell	with my nose.
I	see	with my eyes.
Healthy habits	are	important.
I	wake up	early.
I	have	a healthy breakfast.

2. Sentence Machine

م بترتيب الجُمل التالية لتكون جُمل مناسبة عند كتابة فقرات إنشائية.

▸ **Put the words in the correct order to form sentences.**

1. five - We - have - senses.
3 (1) 2 4
2. smell - I - nose - with - my.
2 1 5 3 4
3. eyes - see - I - my - with.
5 2 1 4 3
4. habits - Healthy -important - are.
2 1 4 3
5. early - wake up - I.
3 2 1
6. breakfast - I - have - a healthy.
4 1 2 5

3. Make your own paragraph

م بقراءة الجُمل [٦] السابقة ثم تصنيفها على حسب كل فقرة إنشائية مطلوب كتابتها من الفقرات التالية.

Write a paragraph about senses.

.....

.....

.....

Write a paragraph about healthy habits.

.....

.....

.....

Scanned with CamScanner

5 Important Topics

تعتبر مهارة الكتابة من المهارات الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع لذا يجب استخدام جمل وأفكار مترابطة. قم بقراءة هذه الجمل لتساعدك على التعامل مع مهارة الكتابة [٢٢ جملة].

1 Our five senses

We have five amazing senses[1]. We use our five senses to learn about the world[2]. Senses help us understand the world around us[3]. Senses also help us stay safe[4]. If we smell smoke, we know there's a fire[5].

Reading

2 A healthy life

It's important to have a healthy life[6]. Having a healthy life helps us stay strong[7]. We should have healthy foods[8]. Healthy foods give us energy for the day[9]. Fruits and vegetables are important for us[10]. They give us vitamins[11]. Walking and doing sports help people feel good[12].

16, Aug save

3 My daily routine

Every day, I follow the same routine[13]. First, I wake up early[14]. Next, I have a healthy breakfast[15]. Then, I go to school[16]. After that, I play sports[17]. Finally, I go to bed[18].

يعود لك

16, Aug save

4 How to stay healthy

Healthy habits help us stay strong[19]. Drinking plenty of water is important[20]. To stay healthy, sleep for nine hours every night[21]. Getting enough sleep helps our mind stay sharp[22].

يظل يقظ / منتبه

From Sentences to Topics

- Start with a capital letter.
- Use the correct tense.
- Put the words in the correct order.
- End with a full stop.

المعاصر لغة إنجليزية / ٤ ب / ترم ١ (٨:٤)

Scanned with CamScanner

Review through the Exam on Unit 1

راجعة الوحدة من خلال اختبارات المحافظات وكتاب الطالب والتقييمات

15 Vocabulary

م 15 مفردة لغوية وردت فى كتاب الطالب والتقييمات والمحافظات
ى تمكن الطالب من اجتياز أى امتحان).

hearing	حاسة السمع	fire	حريق / نار	owner	مالك
smell	حاسة الشم / يشم	brush teeth	يغسل الأسنان	jingling	صوت رنين خفيف
taste	يتذوق	do exercise	يتدرب	healthy	صحى
touch	يلمس	vitamins	فيتامينات	pay for	يدفع (ثمن) لـ ...
see	يرى	take a shower	يستحم	greedy	طماع

15 Vocabulary through the Exam

جمل مختارة على المفردات اللغوية من الأسئلة الأكثر شيوعاً فى كتاب الطالب والتقييمات والاختبارات السابقة.
كررها وهتقابلها كثير فى الامتحان.

1. We use our sense of hearing[1] to hear birds singing.
2. I can smell[2] the flowers.
3. We taste[3] with our tongue.
4. We touch[4] with our hands.
5. We see[5] with our eyes.
6. If we smell smoke, we know there's a fire[6].
7. I always brush my teeth[7] before I go to bed.
8. I do some exercises[8] at the gym every day.
9. She takes vitamins[9] every morning.
10. He takes a shower[10] every day.
11. An owner[11] means someone who has something.
12. Jingling[12] means a light, ringing sound.
13. Sleeping early keeps us healthy[13].
14. She doesn't have enough money to pay for[14] her dress.
15. When someone is greedy[15], they want more than they need.

[1] القاهرة - عابدين	[2] الجيزة - كرداسة	[3] الإسماعيلية - فايد	[4] دمياط - الزرقا	[5] القليوبية - طوخ
[6] كتاب التقييمات	[7] كتاب التقييمات	[8] كتاب التقييمات	[9] الشرقية - بلبيس	[10] الفيوم - سنورس
[11] كتاب الطالب	[12] كتاب الطالب	[13] سوهاج - جرجا	[14] المنيا - مغاغة	[15] الفيوم - إبشواى

Scanned with CamScanner

Language

القواعد اللغوية الهامة التى وردت فى كتاب الطالب والتقييمات والمحافظات
(التى تمكن الطالب من اجتياز أى امتحان)

The Present Simple Tense : زمن المضارع البسيط :

Affirmative statement :

I / They / We / You / اسم جمع + inf. المصدر

He / She / It / اسم مفرد + inf. المصدر + (s/es/ies)

Language through the Exam

جمل مختارة على القواعد اللغوية من الأسئلة الأكثر شيوعاً فى كتاب الطالب والتقييمات والاختبارات السابقة.
ذاكرها وهتقابلها كثير فى الامتحان.

1. My sister studies English every morning.
2. Salma and I take the school bus every morning.
3. The nurse helps sick people.
4. I visit the library every week.
5. We do some exercises in the morning.

[الجيزة - كرداسة / كتاب التقييمات / كتاب الطالب / القاهرة - المعادى / أسيوط - منفلوط]

Reading & Writing through the Exam

الموضوعات الأكثر شيوعًا فى كتاب الطالب والتقييمات والاختبارات السابقة. ذاكرها وهتقابلها كثير فى الامتحان.

1. Read and write

Our Senses

We have five senses. Senses help us stay safe. We taste with our tongue. We hear with our ears. We see with our eyes. We smell with our nose. We touch with our hands.

Vocabulary

استخرج المعنى من النص واكتبه :

يسمع .....

يلمس .....

لسان .....

حواس .....

يشم .....

2. Reorder and write.

1. five - We - senses - have.
.....
2. with - nose - We - our - smell.
.....
3. our - We - hands - with - touch.
.....

3. Write about

- Our senses

.....

.....

.....

.....

Scanned with CamScanner

Sample Test 1 On Unit 1

نصوص الاستماع والتقييمات في نهاية الكتاب

اختبار المعاصر

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False. استمع إلى معلمك واكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ.

1. Goha didn't have enough money to buy food.
2. Goha smelled delicious chicken from a restaurant.
3. The owner asked Goha to pay for the smell.
4. The owner invited Goha in to share the soup.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. I ..... my tongue to taste food.
   a. to use b. using c. use d. uses
2. She doesn't have enough money to ..... for her dress.
   a. pay b. grow c. sit d. solve
3. We can ..... flowers in the garden with our noses.
   a. taste b. touch c. smell d. hear
4. When someone is ....., they want more than they need.
   a. scared b. greedy c. worried d. healthy
5. My mother always ..... the dishes after lunch.
   a. washing b. washes c. wash d. washed
6. Every morning, Eman and her friends ..... to school.
   a. walk b. walks c. walked d. walking

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

اقرأ واكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

learn – senses – park – smell – taste

Today is a beautiful day. We are at the (1) ..... on a school trip. We want to (2) ..... more about things around us. We use our (3) ..... to help us understand more. We can see the sunlight with our eyes. We can (4) ..... the flowers. We can taste fruits. Our senses are amazing and work all the time.

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة.

One day, a monkey saw a small bird with a broken wing. The bird could not fly. The monkey picked some leaves and made a soft bed for the bird. It gave the bird fruits to eat. The bird was happy and thanked the **kind** monkey. After a few days, the bird's wing got better and could fly away. The monkey was very happy that it could help.

Scanned with CamScanner

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The monkey saw a bird with a broken ..... .
   a. leg b. wing c. beak d. feather
2. The underlined word "kind" means ..... .
   a. dangerous b. strong c. brave d. friendly

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What is the general idea of the text ?

.....

4. What did the monkey give the bird ?

.....

5. How did the monkey make a soft bed ?

.....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات بين الأقواس.

1. Every morning, she eats (eat) a healthy breakfast with her family.
2. We visit (visits) our cousins every summer.
3. Some children run and jump (jumps) very well.
4. This salad tastes (taste) really good. I like it.

6 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي.

1. Why does sarah eat healthy food ?

.....

2. having a daily routine is important

.....

7 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below.

اكتب فقرة إنشائية مكونة من أربعة (٤) جمل مستخدمًا الكلمات التالية.

Healthy eating habits

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Guiding words :

• fruits • vegetables • breakfast

I follow healthy eating habits. I eat eggs and cheese in the breakfast. I eating vegetables and pasta. I eat fruits and yogurt in the dinner.

I eat snacks between meals. Eating healthy food keep me strong.

Scanned with CamScanner

Sample Test 2 On Unit 1

نصوص الاستماع والتقييمات في نهاية الكتاب

اختبار مجمع من كتاب الطالب والتقييمات والاختبارات السابقة

1 SB **Listen and write (T) True or (F) False.** استمع إلى معلمك واكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ.

1. Sarah wakes up late every day.
2. She eats eggs and brown bread for breakfast.
3. She drinks plenty of water at school.
4. She goes to bed at 10:00 p.m.

[المنيا - المنيا ٢٠٢٦]

2 **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.** اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. AB I can ..... the soup with my tongue.
   a. smell b. hear c. taste d. watch
2. We ..... the teacher's voice in class. [السويس - جنوب السويس ٢٠٢٦]
   a. hear b. see c. taste d. smell
3. Noha washes her face and ..... dressed for school. [الشرقية - بلبيس ٢٠٢٦]
   a. getting b. gets c. got d. get
4. Sama went to the ..... to have chicken and pasta. [الدقهلية - الجمالية ٢٠٢٦]
   a. factory b. hospital c. restaurant d. museum
5. A farmer ..... a lot of vegetables every year. [القاهرة - السيدة زينب ٢٠٢٦]
   a. growing b. grew c. grow d. grows
6. Heba ..... the park every day. [سوهاج - البلينا ٢٠٢٦]
   a. clean b. cleans c. cleaned d. to clean

3 AB **Read and complete the text with the words in the box.** اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

food – fruits – vegetables – energy – help

Sara eats many kinds of food to stay healthy. Every day, she eats [1] ..... like apples and bananas. She also enjoys [2] ..... such as carrots and peas. Her mother says it is important to eat from all [3] ..... groups. Sara drinks milk, too. She feels strong and full of [4] ..... .

4 AB **Read the text and answer the questions.** اقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة.

Healthy lunch helps children feel strong and happy. A good lunch may have rice, chicken, vegetables, and fruits. Drinking water is also important. You shouldn't eat too many sweets or fried food. If you eat well, you will be able to run, play and study better. Some children bring lunch from home, while others eat at school. Try to choose healthy food every day to keep your body and mind strong.

Scanned with CamScanner

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. A healthy lunch may have chicken, vegetables, fruits, and ..... .

a. water b. pizza c. rice d. candy

2. A healthy lunch helps children feel ..... .

a. strong b. sad c. tired d. sleepy

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What shouldn't you eat too much of ?

.....

4. How does healthy food help you at school ?

.....

5. Is drinking water important ?

Yes, it is

.....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات بين الأقواس.

1. He Eats (eat) healthy food every day. (القاهرة - الزيتون ٢٠٢٦)
2. We Study (studies) English every day. (الجيزة - شمال الجيزة ٢٠٢٦)
3. SB The nurse helps (help) sick people.
4. Every morning, I brushing (brushing) my teeth. (الغربية - غرب طنطا ٢٠٢٦)

6 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى.

1. it's important to go to bed early (بنى سويف - سمسطا ٢٠٢٦)

I .....

2. do you like healthy food

D ?

.....

7 AB Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below.

اكتب فقرة إنشائية مكونة من أربعة (٤) جمل مستخدمًا الكلمات التالية.

My favorite healthy snacks مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Guiding words :

• favorite • apples and nuts • between meals

My favorite healthy snacks are apples and nuts. My favorite food is pizza. I eat snacks between meals. eating healthy snacks keeps me strong

Scanned with CamScanner

1 Listen and choose the correct answer.

1. Goha was a ..... man.
   a. funny b. lazy c. greedy d. sad
2. Goha was walking through the ..... .
   a. garden b. hospital c. market d. park
3. Goha smelled something ..... from the restaurant.
   a. messy b. dirty c. delicious d. bad

2 Read and complete the dialog.

strong - practice - wake - habits

Amany : Do you think following healthy [1] ..... is important ?
Yara : Sure. Healthy habits keep us [2] ..... .
Amany : What healthy habits do you [3] ..... ?
Yara : I [4] ..... up early and I do some exercises in the garden.

3 Choose the correct answer.

1. I can ..... soft and hard things with my hands.
   a. touch b. hear c. smell d. see
2. Waking up early is one of my ..... habits.
   a. hard b. unhealthy c. healthy d. bad
3. My sister ..... English every day.
   a. speaking b. speak c. spoke d. speaks
4. Nada and Yara ..... to school on foot every day.
   a. going b. go c. goes d. is going

4 Read and correct the underlined mistakes.

1. I takes a shower before sleeping. [take]
2. She wash the dishes after lunch. [washes]
3. Ali and Sami feeds their dog every day. [feed]
4. Eman walk to school with her friends every morning. [walks]

5 Read the following passage, then answer the questions.

Our five senses help us understand the world around us. We use our eyes to see colors, shapes, and people. Our ears help us hear sounds like music, voices, and birds. With our nose, we smell flowers, food, and fresh air. Our tongue lets us taste sweet and salty flavors. Lastly, our skin helps us feel and touch. These senses work together, giving us important information every moment of the day.

A. Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1. Our five senses help us understand the world around us. [✓]
2. Our eyes let us taste sweet and salty flavors. [✗]

B. Choose the correct answer.

3. Our ..... help us hear sounds like music and voices.
   a. eyes b. hands c. ears d. legs
4. With our nose, we ..... flowers and fresh air.
   a. taste b. smell c. touch d. hear
5. Our skin helps us feel and ..... .
   a. think b. eat c. run d. touch

6 Write a short paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences on.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

"Habits you do daily"

• routine • drink • exercise • early

Sample Test 1 for Al-Azhar students On Unit 1

اختبار لطلاب الأزهر الشريف

حلول الاستماع والتسجيلات فى نهاية الكتاب

Scanned with CamScanner

Sample Test 2 for Al-Azhar students On Unit 1

اختبار لطلاب الأزهر الشريف

نصوص الاستماع والتقييمات في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer.

1. Having ..... habits helps us live a better life.
   a. bad b. unhealthy c. healthy d. weak
2. When we eat healthy food, we stay ..... and fit.
   a. scared b. sad c. worried d. strong
3. Getting enough ..... keeps our mind sharp.
   a. sleep b. juice c. snacks d. clothes

2 Read and complete the dialog.

safe - fire - senses - important

Ali : What are you doing, Sami ?
Sami : I am reading a book about our (1) ..... .
Ali : Why are our senses (2) ..... ?
Sami : Because they help us stay (3) ..... .
Ali : How can our senses help us stay safe ?
Sami : If we smell smoke, we know there's a (4) ..... .

3 Choose the correct answer.

1. Sight, hearing, taste, and touch are our .....
   a. jobs b. senses c. toys d. machines
2. The ..... is someone who has something.
   a. owner b. jingling c. soup d. breath
3. We ..... our homework every day.
   a. doing b. does c. do d. to do
4. My father ..... the newspaper every day.
   a. to read b. reading c. read d. reads

4 Read and correct the underlined mistakes.

1. The baker **make** fresh bread every day. [.....]
2. The gardener **water** the plants early in the morning. [.....]
3. We **visits** our grandparents on Friday. [.....]
4. The swimmer **practice** in the pool every afternoon. [.....]

5 Read the following passage, then answer the questions.

One day, Goha was hungry, but didn't have enough money to buy food. He smelled delicious soup from a restaurant. He sat outside, enjoying the smell of it. The owner asked Goha to pay for the smell. Goha cleverly offered to pay with the sound of his coins. The owner laughed and invited him in to share the soup.

A. Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1. Goha had enough money to buy food. [✗]
2. The owner invited Goha to share the soup with him. [✓]

B. Choose the correct answer.

3. Goha smelled delicious soup from a ..... .
   a. house b. shop c. restaurant d. market
4. The ..... asked Goha to pay for the smell.
   a. worker b. cleaner c. baker d. owner
5. Goha offered to pay with the sound of his ..... .
   a. bell b. music c. coins d. birds

6 Write a short paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences on.

"How to stay healthy"

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

• water • sleep • important • drink

Scanned with CamScanner

تنويه
- علامة SB تشير إلى تدريبات كتاب الطالب
- علامة AB تشير إلى تدريبات كتاب التقييمات

UNIT 2

My Community

مجتمعى

Learning Outcomes

Listening
- Identify solutions to community problems
- Discriminate the /f/ and /v/ sounds in words

- يتعرف على حلول لمشكلات المجتمع
- يميز بين الصوتين /f/ و /v/ فى كلمات

Reading
- Answer questions about how people help their community based on the information provided in the text
- Suggest solutions to problems in the community
- Share the information about the traditions and festivals of the Delta region and Upper Egypt

- يجيب على أسئلة حول كيفية مساعدة الناس لمجتمعاتهم بناءًا على المعلومات الواردة فى النص
- يقترح حلول للمشكلات التى توجد فى المجتمع
- يشارك المعلومات حول التقاليد والإحتفالات فى منطقة الدلتا والوجه القبلى

Speaking
- Discuss in pairs ways you can do to help your community
- Share stories about your community's history and traditions

- يناقش فى ثنائيات الطرق التى يمكنك القيام بها لمساعدة المجتمع
- يشارك قصص عن تاريخ وعادات مجتمعك

Writing
- Write sentences about ho you help your communit
- Write a diary entry about your community's histor
- Create a poster about a community problem and its solution

ب جمل عن كيفية مساعدة جتمعك
ب مفكرة عن تاريخ مجتمعك
سم ملصق عن مشكلة جتمعية وحلها

Scanned with CamScanner

LESSON 1

Helping the Community

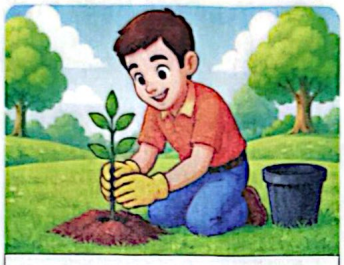
I Vocabulary

قاموس المعاصر الناطق

Key vocabulary

المفردات اللغوية الأساسية موضع الامتحان [كما وردت فى كتاب الطالب]

clean ينظف / نظيف



plant يزرع

collect يجمع

help يساعد

feed يُطعم

volunteer يتطوع

trash	قمامة	neighbors	جيران	community park	حديقة مجتمعية

Extra vocabulary

المفردات اللغوية المساعدة فى التعامل مع الورقة الامتحانية

bottles	زجاجات	clothes	ملابس	street	شارع

• Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present		Past
need	يحتاج	needed
volunteer	يتطوع	volunteered

Irregular

Present		Past
feel	يشعر	felt
give	يعطى	gave

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

It's fun to + inf. [مصدر الفعل]	إنه من الممتع أن	do a great job	يقوم بعمل رائع
That's cool!	هذا رائع!	helping hands	أيدى المساعدة

Scanned with CamScanner

Main points on listening and reading texts

نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة.

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Helping the community	help - community	Amira and Adam are talking about how they help their community. تتحدث أميرة وآدم عن كيف يساعدان مجتمعهم.
	trash - streets	Adam cleans trash from the streets with his friends. آدم ينظف القمامة من الشوارع مع أصدقائه.
	plant - park	Adam plants trees in the park. آدم يزرع الأشجار في الحديقة.
	feed - cats	Adam feeds the dogs and cats. آدم يطعم الكلاب والقطط.
	help - neighbors	Adam's sister helps her neighbors. أخت آدم تساعد جيرانها.
	volunteer - community park	Adam's sister volunteers at the community park. أخت آدم تتطوع في حديقة المجتمع.
	collect - clothes	Amira collects clothes and gives them to people who need them. أميرة تجمع الملابس وتعطيها للناس الذين يحتاجون إليها.

Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

▸ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات المعاصر

1. You ..... a great job at the community.
   a. do b. take c. give d. make
2. Can you ..... me collect the bottles?
   a. volunteer b. take c. feed d. help
3. We clean ..... from our street to help our community.
   a. trees b. trash c. buildings d. lamps
4. She ..... flowers in the garden.
   a. feeds b. cleans c. plants d. goes

SB, AB & Previous Exams تدريبات كتاب الطالب والتقييمات والاختبارات السابقة

5. He ..... clothes and gives them to poor people.
   a. collects b. helps c. grows d. stays

[التقييمات الشهرية - أكتوبر / أسوان - أدفو ٢٠٢٦]

6. AB It's important to help our ..... .
   a. neighbors b. toys c. books d. clothes

Scanned with CamScanner

7. Let's make our park ..... ! Let's collect the trash. (المنوفية - شبين الكوم ٢٠٢٦)

a. clean b. messy c. dirty d. hot

8. AB Many people like to ..... at the community park.

a. do b. volunteer c. collect d. give

9. SB We ..... the ducks.

a. stay b. volunteer c. feed d. plant

II Listening and Reading

• **Listen and read.** استمع واقرأ.

Helping Hands ايدى المساعدة

Amira and Adam are talking about how they help their community.
أميرة وآدم يتحدثان عن كيفية مساعدة مجتمعهم.

[1] مجتمع
[2] ينظف القمامة
[3] يزرع أشجار
[4] يطعم

Hello, Adam! What do you do to help our **community**[1] ? مرحبًا آدم! ماذا تفعل كى تساعد مجتمعنا؟

Hello, Amira! I **clean trash**[2] from the streets with my friends every Saturday. مرحبًا أميرة! أنا أنظف القمامة من الشوارع مع أصدقائي كل يوم سبت.

That's cool! Do you **plant trees**[3]? هذا رائع! هل تزرع أشجارًا ؟

Yes, I do. I plant trees in the park. نعم. ازرع أشجار فى الحديقة.

That's nice! Do you do other things to help?
هذا لطيفًا! هل تصنع أشياء أخرى كى تساعد ؟

Yes! Sometimes, I **feed**[4] the dogs and cats. I feel so happy when I give them food!
نعم، أحيانًا أطعم الكلاب والقطط. أشعر بأننى سعيد للغاية عندما أعطيهم الطعام!

Does your sister help too ? هل أختك تساعد أيضًا ؟

Scanned with CamScanner

Yes, she does! She helps our **neighbors**[5], and she **volunteers**[6] at the community park.

نعم، هى تساعد جيراننا وتتطوع فى الحديقة المجتمعية.

Wow! You both do a **great job**[7]!

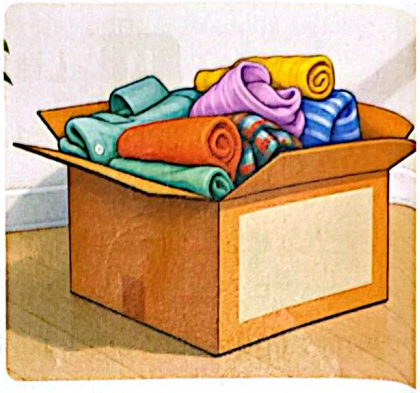
رائع ! أنتما تقومان بعمل رائع !

Thanks! What about you? How do you help?

شكرًا! وماذا عنكِ؟ كيف تساعدين؟

I collect **clothes**[8] and give them to people who need them.

أنا أقوم بجمع الملابس وأعطيها للأشخاص الذين يحتاجون إليها.



That's great[9]! When we all help, we make our community great.

هذا رائع! عندما نساعد جميعًا، نجعل مجتمعنا عظيم.

جيران [5]

يتطوع [6]

عمل رائع [7]

ملابس [8]

هذا رائع [9]

Demonstrate understanding of specific details.

وضح فهمك للتفاصيل المحددة.

Learn 1. What does Amira do with clothes ?

- She collects clothes and gives them to people who need them.

Practice 2. Who feeds the dogs and cats ?

.....

Scanned with CamScanner

General Exercises On Lesson 1

نصوص الاستماع والتقييمات في نهاية الكتاب

EL-MOASSER Exercises تدريبات المعاصر

1 Listen and write [T] True or [F] False. استمع إلى معلمك واكتب [T] صح أو [F] خطأ.

1. We go to the park to help on weekends. ☐
2. We plant flowers and trees there. ☐
3. We collect clothes from the park. ☐
4. We feed the birds. ☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. We ..... flowers and trees in our garden.
   a. volunteer b. plant c. feed d. do
2. My neighbors and I volunteer to help our ..... .
   a. community b. clothes c. food d. senses
3. They ..... trash from the streets.
   a. grow b. stay c. keep d. clean
4. He ..... toys and gives them to poor children.
   a. to collect b. collect c. collecting d. collects
5. Omar is a clever player. He always ..... a great job in the matches.
   a. do b. does c. doing d. to do
6. It's fun to ..... and make the park nice for everyone.
   a. volunteers b. volunteering c. volunteered d. volunteer

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

clothes - trash - great - community - plants

My family and I help our community. Everyone in our [1] ..... helps. We clean [2] ..... from the streets with our neighbors. My father [3] ..... trees in the park. My mother and aunt Salwa collect [4] ..... and give them to people who need them.

4 Punctuate the following.

1. they make the park nice

   .....

2. why do you help your community

   .....

Scanned with CamScanner

General Exercises — On Lesson 1

نصوص الاستماع والتقييمات في نهاية الكتاب

SB, AB & Previous Exams

تدريبات كتاب الطالب والتقييمات والاختبارات السابقة

1 AB **Read and complete the text with the words in the box.**

plant – collect – volunteer – clean – happy

My name is Hassan. I'm in grade four. My brother and I [1] ..... to help in the park. We [2] ..... the park and [3] ..... bottles. We [4] ..... trees and flowers. We feel happy when we help.

2 AB **Read the text and answer the questions:**

My name is Farida. My sister Habiba and I like to help our community. Every Friday we clean trash from our street and plant trees in the park. Also, we feed dogs and cats in the streets. Our brother Ali likes to collect clothes and give them to poor people and help elderly people. When we all help, we make our community great.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Ali likes to .....
   a. feed cats b. collect clothes c. clean trash d. plant trees
2. Ali has ..... sisters.
   a. one b. three c. two d. no

B. Answer the following questions.

3. How does Farida help her community ?

.....

4. Do you help your community ?

..... yes, I do .....

5. Summarize the text in one sentence.

.....

3 **Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below.**

الجواب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

How you help your community

Guiding words :

• clean • plant • help

How help your community. I clean the park and street. I plant a tree and flowers. I help people and my community. I like plant. I clean my home. I feed cats and dogs.

Scanned with CamScanner

LESSON 2

Community Problems and Solutions

I Vocabulary

قاموس المعاصر الناطق

Key vocabulary المفردات اللغوية الأساسية موضع الامتحان [كما وردت فى كتاب الطالب]

problems	مشكلات	traffic	حركة مرور	bin	سلة مهملات
solutions	حلول	dirty	غير نظيف	ground	أرض

Extra vocabulary المفردات اللغوية المساعدة فى التعامل مع الورقة الامتحانية

fewer	أقل (عددًا)	especially	على وجه الخصوص	everywhere	فى كل مكان

• Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present		Past
reduce	يقلل	reduced
fix	يصلح	fixed
move	يتحرك	moved
solve	يحل	solved
discuss	يناقش	discussed

Irregular

Present		Past
leave	يترك	left
throw	يلقى / يرمى	threw
know	يعرف	knew
put	يضع	put

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

• make a difference	يحدث فارق	• look dirty	تبدو غير نظيفة
• on the road	فى الطريق	• instead of	بدلًا من
• take the bus	يستقل الأتوبيس		

Main points on listening and reading texts نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة.

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Problems in the community and their solutions	solutions - community	Mona and Ali have good solutions to some problems in their community. - منى وعلى لديهم حلول جيدة لبعض المشكلات فى مجتمعهم.
	cars - school bus	Ali suggests using cars less and taking the school bus instead. - على يقترح استخدام السيارات بشكل أقل وركوب حافلات المدرسة بدلًا منها.
	trash - bins	Mona says that people don't put trash in bins and that is a problem. - منى تقول إن الناس لا يضعون القمامة فى سلال المهملات وهذه مشكلة.
	put - everywhere	Ali says they can put new bins everywhere for everyone to use. - على يقول إنهم يستطيعون وضع سلال جديدة فى كل مكان ليستخدمها الجميع.

Scanned with CamScanner

Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

• **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات المعاصر

1. Trash is a big ..... in my city.
   a. park b. play c. problem d. community
2. The mechanic can ..... cars.
   a. play b. design c. feed d. fix
3. Think of a ..... to the traffic problem.
   a. bin b. solution c. ground d. sense
4. Good people don't throw trash on the ..... .
   a. bin b. air c. ground d. basket
5. My idea can ..... the problem of traffic.
   a. solve b. waste c. grow d. throw

SB, AB & Previous Exams تدريبات كتاب الطالب والتقييمات والاختبارات السابقة

6. SB We can take the bus ..... of the car.
   a. instead b. through c. near d. far
7. There are many cars on the ..... .
   a. bin b. road c. garden d. routine
8. AB Please, put trash in the ..... .
   a. streets b. bins c. community d. road
9. The problem of ..... happens because there are many cars on th road.
   a. traffic b. rain c. ground d. water
10. Cars ..... quickly in the evening because there is less traffic.
    a. grow b. move c. help d. feed

II Listening and Reading

• **Listen and read.**

Ali and Mona make a difference علي و منى يحدثان فارقًا

Our community has many problems, so let's talk about them.
وجد بمجتمعنا العديد من المشاكل، لذلك هيا نتحدث عنهم.

OK ! Let's also discuss solutions to fix them.
بالطبع! دعنا نناقش أيضًا حلولًا لإصلاحهم.

The first problem is traffic. Cars don't move quickly in the morning, especially near schools.
المشكلة الأولى هى حركة المرور. لا تتحرك السيارات بسرعة فى الصباح، خاصة بالقرب من المدارس.

Do you know how to solve this problem? هل تعلم كيف تُحل هذه المشكلة؟

Yes, I think so. We don't need to use cars every day. We can take the school bus instead. There will be fewer cars on the road.

نعم، اعتقد ذلك. نحن لا نحتاج لإستخدام سيارات كل يوم. يمكننا أن نستقل أتوبيس المدرسة بدلًا من ذلك. فبذلك سيكون هناك سيارات أقل على الطريق.

That's right! The second problem is trash. Some people don't put trash in bins, so the streets look dirty.

هذا صحيح! المشكلة الثانية هى القمامة. بعض الناس لا يضعون القمامة فى سلة المهملات، لذلك تبدو الشوارع غير نظيفة.

Does your street have this problem? هل توجد مثل هذه المشكلة فى شارعك؟

Not anymore. Our neighbors don't throw trash on the ground. We put new bins everywhere. Everyone uses them, and now our street is very clean!

لم تُعد كذلك. فجيراني لا يلقون القمامة على الأرض. نحن نضع سلات مهملات جديدة فى كل مكان، ويستخدمها الجميع والآن شارعنا نظيف جدًا!

That's great! هذا رائع !

bins

- **Read and identify.** اقرأ وتعرف.

Reading Skill

Problems and Solutions

Problems	Solutions
1 Traffic is bad near schools.	Use the school bus instead of cars.
2 Trash is thrown on the ground.	Put bins everywhere.

Scanned with CamScanner

III Language in use

The Present Simple Tense زمن المضارع البسيط

Usage : الاستخدام

▶ We use the present simple for daily habits and routines.

نستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط للتحدث عن عادات أو أعمال روتينية يومية.

Formation : التكوين

A. Affirmative Statements الجمل الخبرية المثبتة

I / You / We / They / اسم جمع + التصريف الأول للفعل

ex. We usually play tennis on Friday.

He / She / It / فاعل مفرد + التصريف الأول للفعل + s / es / ies

ex. He watches TV every day.

B. Negative Statements الجمل الخبرية المنفية

I / We / They / You / اسم جمع + do not = (don't) + inf. مصدر الفعل .

ex. Cars don't move quickly in the morning.

He / She / It / اسم مفرد + does not = (doesn't) + inf. مصدر الفعل .

ex. She doesn't need to use cars every day.

C. Interrogative صيغة الاستفهام

Do + I / we / they / you /اسم جمع + inf. + باقي السؤال ?

للإجابة

Yes, + subj. + do. / No, + subj. + don't.

ex. Do you know how to solve the problem ?

- Yes, I do. No, I don't.

Does + he / she / it / اسم مفرد + inf. + باقي السؤال ?

للإجابة

Yes, + subj. + does. / No, + subj. + doesn't

ex. Does your street have this problem ?

- Yes, it does. -No, it doesn't.

Scanned with CamScanner

Pop Quiz on Language in use

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات المعاصر

1. She ..... like fast food.
   a. don't b. doesn't c. hasn't d. isn't
2. Do you ..... your room every day ?
   a. cleans b. cleaning c. cleaned d. clean
3. I ..... get up early on the weekend.
   a. doesn't b. don't c. am not d. haven't
4. He doesn't ..... the guitar.
   a. plays b. playing c. play d. played

SB, AB & Previous Exams تدريبات كتاب الطالب والتقييمات والاختبارات السابقة

5. SB Do you ..... how to solve this problem ?
   a. knew b. know c. knows d. knowing
6. AB I ..... drink tea in the morning.
   a. don't b. isn't c. aren't d. doesn't
7. AB ..... you like sweets ?
   a. Do b. Does c. Is d. Was
8. She ..... eat pizza for breakfast. [التقييمات الشهرية - أكتوبر / الأقصر - الطود ٢٠٢٦]
   a. don't b. doesn't c. aren't d. am not

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات المعاصر

1. She doesn't eat ..... **(eats)** unhealthy food.
2. Does Reda help ..... **(helps)** in the park?
3. We don't ..... **(doesn't)** like apples, but we love bananas.
4. Do ..... **(Does)** you take long showers?

SB, AB & Previous Exams تدريبات كتاب الطالب والتقييمات والاختبارات السابقة

5. Does ..... **(Do)** Ali go running in the morning ? [التقييمات الشهرية - أكتوبر / المنوفية - منوف ٢٠٢٦]
6. AB We study ..... **(studies)** English every day.
7. SB She doesn't like ..... **(don't like)** pollution.

Scanned with CamScanner

General Exercises — On Lesson 2

نصوص الاستماع والتقييمات في نهاية الكتاب

EL-MOASSER Exercises تدريبات المعاصر

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

instead – cars – traffic – problems – community

Our community is an amazing place to live in. However, there are many [1] ..... . One of these problems is the [2] ..... . To solve it, we think we don't need to use [3] ..... every day. We can take the school bus [4] ..... .

2 Read the text and answer the questions.

Trash is one of the biggest problems in my neighborhood. It is a very dangerous problem because it can make many people ill. This problem happens because people don't put trash in bins. They throw the trash on the ground so the streets look **dirty**. Solving this problem isn't easy. So my parents get together with our neighbors and find a solution to this problem. We will put bins everywhere.

A. **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. The opposite of the underlined word "**dirty**" is "..... ".
   a. harmful b. bad c. clean d. fast
2. This text is about "..... ".
   a. Neighbors b. Trash c. Clothes d. Healthy food

B. **Answer the following questions.**

3. Why is trash a dangerous problem ?
   .....
4. How can they solve this problem ?
   .....
5. Why does the problem of trash happen ?
   .....

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets

1. Do you ..... **(got)** up early ?
2. Our teacher ..... **(don't)** speak Arabic in the classroom.
3. We ..... **(doesn't)** need new clothes.
4. ..... **(Do)** she walk to school every day?

4 Punctuate the following.

1. yes, I use the trash bins
   .....
2. do cars move quickly in the morning
   .....

Scanned with CamScanner

General Exercises On Lesson 2

نصوص الاستماع والتقييمات في نهاية الكتاب

SB, AB & Previous Exams

تدريبات كتاب الطالب والتقييمات والاختبارات السابقة

1 Listen and write [T] True or [F] False. استمع إلى معلمك واكتب [T] صح أو [F] خطأ.

1. Trash is a big problem in my community. [✓]
2. The streets look clean. [✗]
3. My family thinks we can solve this problem if we work together. [✓]
4. We can put new bins everywhere to put trash in them. [✓]

[المنوفية - بركة السبع ٢٠٢٦]

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. How can we ..... traffic? [دمياط - عزبة البرج ٢٠٢٦]
   a. throw b. look c. reduce d. put
2. ..... your neighbor help in a community park? [الشرقية - ديرب نجم ٢٠٢٦]
   a. Was b. Do c. Is d. Does
3. SB Some people ..... put trash in bins.
   a. hasn't b. aren't c. doesn't d. don't
4. We have good solutions to ..... the problems. [البحيرة - المحمودية ٢٠٢٦]
   a. waste b. solve c. move d. have
5. SB Many streets look ..... because of the trash.
   a. wonderful b. dirty c. clean d. awesome
6. The traffic ..... move fast because there are too many cars. [كفر الشيخ - دسوق ٢٠٢٦]
   a. haven't b. doesn't
   c. isn't d. don't

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. AB ...Does... (Do) Sally like ice-cream ?
2. AB Ali ...does not... (not eat) unhealthy food.
3. AB Do you ...study... (studies) Arabic every day ?
4. Hala ...doesn't... (don't) like dirty places. [أسيوط - أسيوط ٢٠٢٦]

4 AB Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below.

Traffic problem مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Guiding words :

- school
- walk
- buses

.....

.....

Scanned with CamScanner

Accumulative Dictation

إملاء تراكمى على الدروس

اختبار لقياس وتقييم مدى استيعاب الطالب للمفردات اللغوية

LESSON 1

.....	قمامة	clean	.....
.....	يزرع	collect	.....
.....	يطعم	community park	.....

LESSON 2

.....	حركة المرور	bin	.....
.....	مشكلات	ground	.....
.....	حلول	dirty	.....

LESSONS 1&2

تدريب تراكمى على المفردات اللغوية للدروس الأول والثانى

1. Complete the following sentences using the words from the box.

difference - volunteer - instead - neighbors

1. I drink water ..... of soda to stay healthy.
2. Many students ..... to clean the park
3. I help my ..... to make our community better.
4. We can make a ..... by helping others.

2. Read and write.

• Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Present		Past	Present		Past
.....	يحتاج	needed	feel	يشعر	.....
leave	يترك	.....	.....	يعطى	gave
.....	يعرف	knew	reduce	يقلل	.....
discuss	يناقش	.....	.....	يحل	solved

Scanned with CamScanner

LESSON 3

Egypt : My Culture

I Vocabulary

قاموس المعاصر الناطق

Key vocabulary

المفردات اللغوية الأساسية موضع الامتحان [كما وردت فى كتاب الطالب]

the Delta	دلتا النيل	Upper Egypt	الوجه القبلى	region	منطقة / إقليم
culture	ثقافة	decorations	زينة / زخارف	outfit	رداء خاص [ملابس]
Spring Festival	مهرجان الربيع	turban	عمامة	crafts	حرف يدوية
celebration	إحتفال	traditions	تقاليد	designs	تصميمات

Extra vocabulary

المفردات اللغوية المساعدة فى التعامل مع الورقة الامتحانية

north	الشمال	pottery	فخار / صناعة الفخار	harvest	حصاد
south	الجنوب	traditional	تقليدى	pants	بنطلون
Nubia	النوبة	carpets	سجاد	stylish	أنيق
sugar cane	قصب السكر	galabeya	جلابية		

• Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present		Past
celebrate	يحتفل	celebrated
paint	يدهن	painted

Irregular

Present		Past
weave	ينسج	wove
wear	يرتدى	wore

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

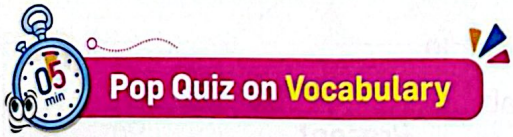
- known for مشهور بـ
- in bright colors بألوان زاهية
- for special events للمناسبات الخاصة
- by hand يدويًا
- tell stories يحكى قصصًا

Scanned with CamScanner

Main points on listening and reading texts

نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة.

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Culture in Upper Egypt and the Delta	regions - the Delta	Egypt has two special regions: the Delta and Upper Egypt. مصر بها منطقتان مميزتان: الدلتا وصعيد مصر.
	celebrate	In the Delta, they celebrate the Spring Festival. في الدلتا، يحتفل الناس بعيد الربيع.
	factories - crafts	In the Delta, many people work in factories and make beautiful crafts. في الدلتا، يعمل كثير من الناس في المصانع ويصنعون حرفًا جميلة.
	sugar cane - festivals	In Upper Egypt, people celebrate the sugar cane harvest with big festivals. في صعيد مصر، يحتفل الناس بحصاد قصب السكر بمهرجانات كبيرة.
	pottery - carpets	In Upper Egypt, they make pottery and weave colorful carpets by hand. في صعيد مصر ، يصنعون الفخار وينسجون سجادًا ملونًا يدويًا.
	paint - designs	In Nubia, houses are painted in bright colors and have special designs. في النوبة، تطلى المنازل بألوان زاهية ولها تصميمات مميزة.
	galabeyas - turbans	In Upper Egypt, men wear galabeyas and sometimes turbans. في صعيد مصر، يرتدى الرجال الجلاليب وأحيانًا العمائم.
	pants - shirts	In the Delta, men wear modern clothes like pants and shirts. في الدلتا، يرتدى الرجال ملابس عصرية مثل البنطلون والقمصان.
	share - traditions	Upper Egypt and the Delta share many of the same traditions. يشترك صعيد مصر والدلتا في كثير من التقاليد نفسها.



- **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات المعاصر

1. We ..... Eid Al-Fitr with our families.
   a. build b. celebrate c. grow d. put
2. Our house looks beautiful with these ..... .
   a. decorations b. songs c. traditions d. factories
3. Some people ..... colorful carpets by hand.
   a. wear b. weave c. grow d. tell
4. Mobiles are ..... inventions.
   a. proud b. old c. ancient d. modern
5. Girls like to wear ..... dresses.
   a. craft b. stylish c. proud d. strong

Scanned with CamScanner

6. AB Houses are ..... in bright colors.
   a. celebrated b. weaved c. painted d. shared

7. Egyptians eat colorful eggs in the Spring ..... . [الفيوم - سنورس ٢٠٢٦]
   a. Culture b. Outfit c. Festival d. Craft

8. They make juice from sugar ..... . [دمياط - الروضه ٢٠٢٦]
   a. corn b. cone c. cane d. coin

9. Ancient Egyptian houses had beautiful ..... . [القاهرة - السيدة زينب ٢٠٢٦]
   a. designs b. clothes c. turbans d. regions

10. We wear special ..... in festivals. [التقييمات الشهرية - اكتوبر / القليوبية - بنها ٢٠٢٦]
    a. harvest b. traditions c. outfits d. flags

11. SB Egyptians are proud of their ....., and they love to celebrate together.
    a. culture b. songs c. carpets d. factories

12. My mother told me ..... about her family.
    a. foods b. letters c. stories d. books

[التقييمات الشهرية - اكتوبر / كفر الشيخ - الرياض ٢٠٢٦]

II Listening and Reading

• **Listen and read.** استمع واقرأ.

Egypt - My culture مصر - ثقافي

Egypt has two special regions: the Delta in the north and Upper Egypt in the south. Each region has its traditions and culture.

In the Delta region, they celebrate the Spring Festival with colorful decorations and special foods. Farmers grow rice and cotton. Many people work in factories and make beautiful crafts. Women are known for making clothes.

Scanned with CamScanner

In Upper Egypt, life is different. People celebrate the sugar cane harvest with big festivals. They make pottery and weave colorful carpets by hand. Families sing traditional songs and tell old stories. In some places like Nubia, houses are painted in bright colors and have special designs.

In the Delta region, men wear galabeyas or modern clothes like pants and shirts. Women wear stylish dresses or traditional outfits for special events.

In Upper Egypt, men also wear galabeyas and sometimes turbans. Women wear colorful dresses.

Even though the two places have some differences, they share many of the same traditions. Egyptians are proud of their culture and love to celebrate it together!

تمتلك مصر منطقتين متميزتين: دلتا النيل فى الشمال والوجه القبلى فى الجنوب. لكل منطقة تقاليدها وثقافتها الخاصة بها.

فى منطقة الدلتا، يحتفل الناس بعيد الربيع بالزينة الملونة وأطعمة خاصة. يقوم المزارعون بزراعة الأرز والقطن. يعمل العديد من الناس فى المصانع ويصنعون حرف يدوية جميلة. تشتهر النساء بصناعة الملابس.

فى الوجه القبلى، تكون الحياة مختلفة. يحتفل الناس بحصاد قصب السكر من خلال مهرجانات كبيرة ويقومون بصناعة الفخار وينسجون السجاد اليدوى الملون. تغنى العائلات أغانى تراثية وتحكى القصص القديمة. ففى بعض الأماكن مثل النوبة، تُدهن المنازل بألوان زاهية ولها تصاميم خاصة.

فى منطقة الدلتا، يرتدى الرجال الجلاليب أو ملابس عصرية مثل البناطيل والقمصان وترتدى النساء فساتين أنيقة أو ملابس تقليدية فى المناسبات الخاصة.

فى الوجه القبلى، يرتدى الرجال الجلاليب أيضًا وأحيانًا العمائم. وترتدى النساء الفساتين الملونة.

على الرغم من وجود بعض الاختلافات بين المنطقتين إلا أنهما يشتركان فى العديد من نفس التقاليد. فالمصريون فخورون بثقافتهم ويحبون الاحتفال بها معًا !

Demonstrate understanding of specific details.

وضح فهمك للتفاصيل المحددة.

Learn 1. Where is the Delta ?
- It's in the north of Egypt.

Practice 2. Where do people grow sugar cane?
.....

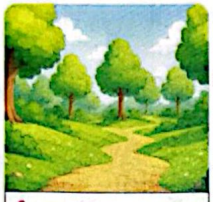
Scanned with CamScanner

III Pronunciation

- The letter "f" makes the /f/ sound.
- The /f/ sound is voiceless ⟶ your throat doesn't vibrate.

- الصوت /f/ هو صوت ليس به اهتزاز ⟵ لا تهتز فيه حنجرتك [أحبالك الصوتية الموجودة بداخل الحلق].

factory مصنع



forest غابة

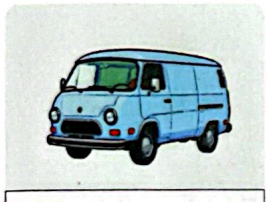
frog ضفدع

flag علم

fish سمكة

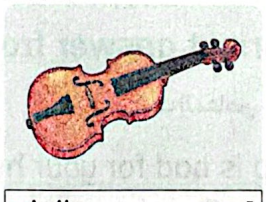
- The letter "v" makes the /v/ sound.
- The /v/ sound is voiced ⟶ your throat vibrates.

- الصوت /v/ هو صوت اهتزازى ⟵ تهتز فيه حنجرتك [أحبالك الصوتية] عند نطقه.

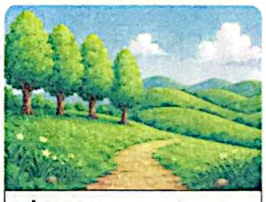


van شاحنة

vest سترة



violin آلة الكمان



view منظر طبيعى

Pop Quiz on Pronunciation

• Read and sort the words.

forest - violin - flag - vest

/v/	/f/
.....	.....
.....	.....

Scanned with CamScanner

IV Language in use

A prefix

is a small group of letters added to the beginning of a word to change its meaning.

البادئة : هو مجموعة صغيرة من الحروف تضاف فى بداية الكلمة لتغيير معناها.

dis- = not or opposite	like يحب	dislike يكره
	appear يظهر	disappear يختفى
	honest امين	dishonest غير امين
il- = not	legal قانونى	illegal غير قانونى
	logical منطقى	illogical غير منطقى
ir- = not	regular منتظم	irregular غير منتظم
	responsible مسؤول	irresponsible غير مسؤول
	relevant مرتبط / ذو صلة بـ	irrelevant ليس ذو صلة / غير مرتبط بـ

Pop Quiz on Language in use

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات المعاصر

1. ..... sleep is bad for your health.
   a. Irregular b. Regular c. Honest d. Responsible
2. Stars ..... in the morning.
   a. appear b. disappear c. dislike d. like
3. It is ..... to take money that is not ours.
   a. legal b. responsible c. illegal d. relevant

SB, AB & Previous Exams تدريبات كتاب الطالب والتقييمات والاختبارات السابقة

4. AB It's ..... to smoke here. (غربية - شرق المحلة ٢٠٢٦)
   a. legal b. illegal c. like d. dislike
5. SB What Omar says is ..... . It doesn't make sense غير منطقى.
   a. illogical b. appear c. dishonest d. dislike

Scanned with CamScanner

6. SB The teacher says my question is ..... to the lesson.

a. legal b. irrelevant c. appear d. irresponsible

7. SB The cat always ..... after eating all the food.

a. irregular b. disappears c. illegal d. dishonest

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات المعاصر

1. The plane ..... **(appeared)** behind the clouds.
2. It's ..... **(legal)** to use the mobile when you drive.
3. My grandpa ..... **(likes)** noise and pollution.
4. Rain is ..... **(regular)** in the dry desert.
5. Your question is ..... **(relevant)**. We are not talking about that.
6. The children are ..... **(responsible)**. They waste their time.

SB, AB & Previous Exams تدريبات كتاب الطالب والتقييمات والاختبارات السابقة

7. AB The verb "make" has an ..... **(regular)** past form.
8. AB He is ..... **(responsible)**. He forgets his keys.

(التقييمات الشهرية - اكتوبر / دمياط - عزبة البرج ٢٠٢٦)

9. SB It is ..... **(legal)** to drive here. It isn't safe.
10. SB The students are ..... **(responsible)**. Their classroom is very dirty.

(التقييمات الشهرية - اكتوبر / كفر الشيخ - قلين ٢٠٢٦)

Scanned with CamScanner

General Exercises On Lesson 3

نصوص الاستماع والتقييمات في نهاية الكتاب

EL-MOASSER Exercises تدريبات المعاصر

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. We like football, but we ..... tennis.
   a. like b. dislike c. likes d. doesn't like
2. ..... and shirts are modern clothes.
   a. Galabeyas b. Pants c. Crafts d. Turbans
3. Egypt has two special ..... : the Delta and Upper Egypt.
   a. regions b. flags c. traditions d. events
4. He is ..... of his famous father.
   a. greedy b. honest c. proud d. smart
5. We ..... the floor with beautiful carpets.
   a. covers b. doesn't cover c. hasn't cover d. cover
6. Farmers ..... the cotton from fields by hand.
   a. harvest b. harvests c. harvesting d. is harvesting

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets

1. He is ..... **(honest)**. He doesn't tell the truth.
2. Sara ..... **(isn't)** study at night.
3. It is ..... **(responsible)** to throw trash on the ground.
4. No one likes his idea. It's ..... **(logical)**.

3 Punctuate the following.

1. my father works in a cotton factory

   .....

2. which part of Egypt are you from

   .....

4 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below.

يجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Your community traditions

Guiding words :

• Delta • rice and cotton • Spring Festival

.....

.....

.....

Scanned with CamScanner

General Exercises On Lesson 3

نصوص الاستماع والتقييمات في نهاية الكتاب

SB, AB & Previous Exams

تدريبات كتاب الطالب والتقييمات والاختبارات السابقة

1 AB **Read and complete the text with the words in the box.**

galabeyas – Upper – sugar cane – colorful – kind

Every summer, I travel to my grandfather. He lives in Luxor. It is a governorate in (1) ..... Egypt. Men there wear (2) ..... and women wear colorful dresses. Farmers grow (3) ..... . People there are very (4) ..... .

2 **Read the text and answer the questions.**

Northern Egypt has the Delta with rice fields and factories. People wear modern clothes or traditional galabeyas. Southern Upper Egypt has sugar cane farms and hand-made carpets. Nubian villages have bright blue houses. Both regions share holidays and delicious food. Egyptians work hard, but always make time for family and celebrations. Their culture is old, but still strong today. Egyptians are always proud of their culture and traditions.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Upper Egypt is in the ..... part of Egypt.
   a. northern b. southern c. eastern d. middle
2. Egypt's culture is ..... .
   a. new b. modern c. small d. old

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What do the Nubian villages have ?
   .....
4. What do both regions share ?
   .....
5. What do people wear in Northern Egypt ?
   .....

(الغربية - زفتى ٢٠٢٦)

Rewind

نشط ذاكرتك وأكمل الرحلة

Language

يلا نرجع بسرعة نفتكر القواعد اللغوية في الوحدة السابقة

The Present Simple Tense

Affirmative statement : I, You, They, We + inf. .....

He, She, It + inf. + (s, es, ies)

Ex. : She takes vitamins every morning.

Scanned with CamScanner

LESSONS 4&5

- Writing
- Think and Create

I Vocabulary

Key vocabulary
المفردات اللغوية الأساسية موضع الامتحان [كما وردت فى كتاب الطالب]

diary	مفكرة	wooden	خشبى	air pollution	تلوث الهواء
neighborhood	حى	stalls	اكشاك	safely	بأمان
history	تاريخ	train station	محطة قطار	rich	غنى

Extra vocabulary
المفردات اللغوية المساعدة فى التعامل مع الورقة الامتحانية

amazing	مدهش	market	سوق	fresh	طازج
supermarket	متجر	building	مبنى	photos	صور [فوتوغرافية]

• Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present		Past
walk	يمشى	walked
cycle	يركب دراجة	cycled

Irregular

Present		Past
sell	يبيع	sold
keep	يحفظ	kept
build	يبنى	built

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

- still stand — ما زالت قائمة
- proud to + inf. — فخور أن
- Yours truly — مع خالص تحياتى

Main points on listening and reading texts
نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة.

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Our community's history	stories - history	Grandpa told Hana amazing stories about their community's history. حكى الجد لهنا قصصًا رائعة عن تاريخ مجتمعهم.
	neighborhood - stalls	Their neighborhood had an old market with wooden stalls. كان حيهم يحتوى على سوق قديم به أكشاك خشبية.
	vegetables	People sold fresh fruits and vegetables every morning. كان الناس يبيعون الفواكة والخضروات الطازجة كل صباح.
	gardens	In their neighborhood, there were small houses with beautiful gardens. كان يوجد فى حيهم بيوت صغيرة بها حدائق جميلة.
	play - safely	Children played safely in the streets. كان الأطفال يلعبون بأمان فى الشوارع.
	school - stand	People helped to build the school that still stands today. ساعد الناس فى بناء المدرسة التى ما زالت قائمة حتى اليوم.

Scanned with CamScanner

Let's stop air pollution	ways - stop	There are many ways to stop air pollution. يوجد العديد من الطرق للحد من تلوث الهواء.
	cycle - plant	Walk or cycle to school and plant trees in your community. أذهب إلى المدرسة سيرًا على الأقدام أو بالدراجة وأزرع الأشجار فى مجتمعك.
	plastic - clean	Use less plastic and keep your community clean. استخدم كمية أقل من البلاستيك وحافظ على نظافة مجتمعك.

Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات المعاصر

1. Healthy food is ..... in vitamins.
   a. honest b. rich c. greedy d. legal
2. ..... tells us about things in the past.
   a. English b. Math c. Music d. History
3. Plant trees to stop air ..... .
   a. traffic b. community c. pollution d. routine
4. The post office is a big ..... .
   a. building b. street c. photo d. story

SB, AB & Previous Exams تدريبات كتاب الطالب والتقييمات والاختبارات السابقة

5. SB You should walk or ..... to school to stop air pollution.
   a. cycle b. wear c. plant d. reduce
6. They buy fresh vegetables from the ..... .
   a. park b. station c. market d. cinema

[التقييمات الشهرية - اكتوبر / البحيرة - الرحمانية ٢٠٢٦]

7. This box is made of wood. It is ..... .
   a. plastic b. wooden c. funny d. metal

[المنوفية - شبين الكوم ٢٠٢٦]

8. AB We can take the ..... from the train station.
   a. car b. taxi c. train d. bus
9. AB My old school still ..... today.
   a. plays b. stands c. writes d. does

Scanned with CamScanner

II Listening and Reading

• **Listen and read.** استمع واقرأ.

A Diary Entry

Date

March 15, 2025

Dear **diary**[1], → Greeting

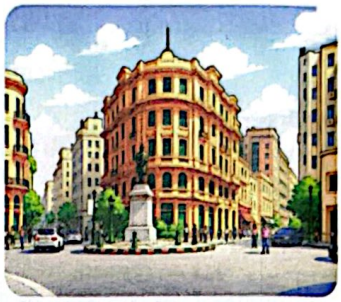
Today, Grandpa told me **amazing stories**[2] about our community's **history**[3]. Fifty years ago, our **neighborhood**[4] was very different! Where our big supermarket stands now, there was a beautiful old market with **wooden stalls**[5] . People sold fresh fruits and **vegetables**[6] every morning.

The tall buildings weren't here then. Instead, there were small houses with beautiful **gardens**[7]. Everyone knew their **neighbors**[8], and children played **safely**[9] in the streets. There was even a small train station where our park is now!

Grandpa showed me old photos. I saw the old school that **still stands**[10] today. He said people helped to build it **together**[11] many years ago. It makes me proud to know our community has such a **rich history**[12].

Details

Yours truly,
Hana → Closing



[1] يومياتى
[2] قصص مدهشة
[3] تاريخ
[4] حى
[5] اكشاك خشبية
[6] خضروات
[7] حدائق
[8] جيران
[9] بأمان
[10] مازال قائمًا
[11] معًا
[12] تاريخ ثرى

١٥ مارس ٢٠٢٥

يومياتى العزيزة،

اليوم اخبرنى جدى قصصًا رائعة عن تاريخ مجتمعنا. منذ خمسون عام كان الحى الخاص بنا مختلفًا جدًا ! حيث يوجد المتجر الكبير الآن، كان هناك سوق جميل فيه اكشاك خشبية، كان الناس يبيعون فيه الفواكه والخضروات الطازجة كل صباح. لم يكن هناك مبانى شاهقة فى ذلك الوقت. بدلًا من ذلك ، كانت هناك منازل صغيرة بها حدائق جميلة. كان الجميع يعرف جيرانهم، وكان الاطفال يلعبون بأمان فى الشوارع. كان هناك أيضًا محطة قطار صغيرة ، حيث يوجد المنتزه الخاص بنا الآن !

عرض لى جدى صورًا قديمة. رأيت المدرسة القديمة التى لا تزال قائمة اليوم. وقال إن الناس ساعدوا فى بنائها معًا منذ سنوات عديدة. فذلك يجعلنى فخورة بتاريخ مجتمعنا الثرى.

مع خالص تحياتى،

هنا

Scanned with CamScanner

III Writing Skill

• **Look, read and learn.** انظر، اقرأ وتعلم.

How to write a diary entry
كيفية كتابة يوميات

Steps of writing a diary خطوات كتابة يوميات

1 **Start with the date**
Write the date at the top of your page.
ابدأ بالتاريخ
اكتب التاريخ في أعلى الصفحة الخاصة بك.

2 **Write a greeting**
It can be "Dear diary," or "Hello diary",
اكتب التحية
من الممكن أن تكون "Dear diary" أو "Hello diary"

When writing a diary, you should ....

3 **Add details**
Who you talked to, what you heard, and how you felt.
اضف تفاصيل
إلى من تحدثت، ماذا سمعت وكيف شعرت.

4 **End with a closing**
Finish your diary with "Yours truly, and your name."
أنهى بخاتمة
أنهى يومياتك بـ "مع خالص تحياتي واسمك".

Pop Quiz on Writing Skill 05 min

للمزيد من إتقان المهارات اللغوية كراسة المعاصر للمهارات اللغوية في نهاية الكتاب

• **Write a diary entry about your community's history.**

Guiding elements :

- What did you learn about your community's past ?
- What was different then ?
- What buildings or places changed ?

Date : .....

Dear diary,

.....

.....

Yours truly,

Name : .....

Scanned with CamScanner

• Look and read.

انظر واقرأ.

Ways to stop Air Pollution

طرق لانهاء تلوث الهواء

Let's Stop Air Pollution

هيا ننهى تلوث الهواء

Solutions
حلول

Walk or cycle to school.
سر أو اركب دراجتك للمدرسة.

Plant trees in your community.
ازرع أشجار فى مجتمعك.

Use less plastic.
استخدم بلاستيك بشكل أقل.

Keep your community clean.
حافظ على مجتمعك نظيف.

• Read and identify.

اقرأ وتعرف.

• To make a poster, it should include:

• عند تصميم ملصقًا، يجب أن يتضمن :

- A clear title — عنوان واضح
- Pictures or drawings — صور أو رسومات
- 2 - 3 solutions — حلين أو ثلاثة حلول

Scanned with CamScanner

General Exercises On Lessons 4 & 5

نصوص الاستماع والتقييمات في نهاية الكتاب

EL-MOASSER Exercises تدريبات المعاصر

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. There are many tall buildings in my ..... .
   a. habits b. routine c. traditions d. neighborhood
2. ..... Yara clean her room every day?
   a. Are b. Does c. Is d. Was
3. Grandpa told me ..... about our family's history.
   a. stalls b. stories c. projects d. senses
4. We bought juice from a small ..... in the market.
   a. toy b. bike c. stall d. diary
5. We ..... a poster with colorful photos.
   a. to design b. design c. designs d. designing
6. Does the cat ..... on the chairs ?
   a. sleeps b. sleeping c. slept d. sleep

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

community – song – tells – traditional – history

I love my grandma. When we visit her, she [1] ..... us interesting stories. She knows a lot about our community's [2] ..... . She sometimes asks us some questions after the story, or she sings a [3] ..... . We learn a lot about our [4] ..... from our grandma's stories.

3 Punctuate the following.

1. grandma showed me her old photo

   .....

2. what makes you proud of your community's history

   .....

4 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below.

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Your community's history

Guiding words :

• neighborhood • old market • fresh vegetables

.....

.....

Scanned with CamScanner

General Exercises On Lessons 4 & 5

نصوص الاستماع والتقييمات في نهاية الكتاب

SB, AB & Previous Exams

تدريبات كتاب الطالب والتقييمات والاختبارات السابقة

1 Read the text and answer the questions.

Hana's grandpa told her about their neighborhood's history. Fifty years ago, it was very quiet. There were small houses with beautiful gardens. Instead of the big supermarkets, there was an old market with wooden stalls. People sold fresh vegetables and fruits every morning. Everyone knew their neighbors and children played safely in the streets.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Fifty years ago, the neighborhood was very ..... .
   a. busy b. quiet c. noisy d. dirty
2. There were small houses with beautiful ..... .
   a. gardens b. pools c. fields d. rivers

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Where did children play safely ?
   .....
4. Summarize the text in one sentence.
   .....
5. Do you like to live in a quiet neighborhood ? [كفر الشيخ - الرياض ٢٠٢٦]
   .....

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. SB ..... **(Does)** they collect plastic bottles from the street ?
2. AB We don't ..... **(puts)** trash in bins.
3. The dog took the toy and ..... **(appeared)**. We couldn't find it. [القليوبية - بنها ٢٠٢٦]
4. AB ..... **(Do)** Ramy study English every day ?

Rewind

نشط ذاكرتك وأكمل الرحلة

Vocabulary

يلا نرجع بسرعة نفتكر المفردات اللغوية في الوحدة السابقة.

hearing	حاسة السمع	wash face	يغسل الوجه	soup	حساء [شوربة]
smoke	دخان	energy	طاقة	greedy	طماع / جشع
sight	حاسة الابصار	brush teeth	يغسل الاسنان	owner	مالك
touch	يلمس / حاسة اللمس	take a shower	يستحم	daily routine	روتين يومى

Scanned with CamScanner

Accumulative Dictation

إملاء تراكمى على الدروس

اختبار لقياس وتقييم مدى استيعاب الطالب للمفردات اللغوية

LESSON 3

.....	ثقافة	Upper Egypt	.....
.....	احتفال	crafts	.....
.....	عمامة	region	.....

LESSONS 4&5

.....	خشبى	diary	.....
.....	اكشاك	neighborhood	.....
.....	بأمان	history	.....

LESSONS 3,4 &5

تدريب تراكمى على المفردات اللغوية للدروس الثالث والرابع والخامس

1. Complete the following sentences using the words from the box.

neighborhood - station - outfit - decorations

1. The ..... made our living room look beautiful.
2. She is wearing a new ..... for her birthday party.
3. The train arrived at the train ..... on time.
4. Our ..... was calm and quiet fifty years ago.

2. Read and write.

• Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Present		Past	Present		Past
.....	يبيع	sold	build	يبنى	.....
cycle	يركب دراجة	.....	.....	يمشى	walked
.....	يرتدى	wore	celebrate	يحتفل	.....
weave	ينسج	.....	.....	يدهن	painted

Scanned with CamScanner

Skills 1 Reading Comprehension

Identify the general idea of the text

تختبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مدى إتقانك لمهارة القراءة.

التحدى قد تجد صعوبة فى تحديد الفكرة العامة بسبب وجود عدة أفكار تم عرضها فى النص.

مفتاح الحل عند قراءة النص تجد أن كل الأفكار تدور حول موضوع واحد محدد هو (الفكرة الرئيسية / العامة) للنص.

1 Learn تعلم كيفية الإجابة.

Read the text and learn how to answer:

Egypt has two special regions : the Delta and Upper Egypt. In the Delta region, they celebrate the Spring Festival with colorful decorations and special foods. In Upper Egypt, life is different. People celebrate the sugar cane harvest with big festivals.

• The text is about "....." .

Or : The main/general idea of the text is about "....." .

Or : The text talks about " ....." .

Or : What's the main idea of the text ? / What's the text about ?

a. Festivals

b. Sea animals

c. Two special regions in Egypt

d. Desert plants

شرح الحل

بعد قراءة كل الجمل نلاحظ أنها تدور حول (Two special regions in Egypt)

2 Master اتقن طريقة حل السؤال (متبعًا الخطوة الأولى)

Read the text and answer the questions :

Today, grandpa told me amazing stories about our community's history. Fifty years ago, our neighborhood was very different! There was a beautiful old market with wooden stalls. People sold fresh fruits and vegetables every morning. The tall buildings weren't here then. Instead, there were small houses with beautiful gardens.

• The text is about "....." .

Or : The main/general idea of the text is about "....." .

Or : The text talks about "....." .

Or : What's the main idea of the text ? / What's the text about ?

a. Community's history

b. Traffic

c. Places

d. Food

Scanned with CamScanner

2 Review, Practice & Master
for Correction Notes

الهدف من هذا الجزء
- التأكيد على فهم الطالب للقواعد اللغوية.
- اكتساب الطالب مهارة التعامل مع سؤال تصحيح الخطأ.

Review راجع القاعدة وتأكد من فهمك

Negative statements in the Present Simple : الجمل الخبرية المنفية فى زمن المضارع البسيط :

He/She/It / اسم مفرد + doesn't +inf. ..... باقى الجملة .

I / We / You / They / اسم جمع + don't + inf. ..... باقى الجملة .

Interrogative in the Present Simple : صيغة الاستفهام فى زمن المضارع البسيط :

Do / Does + subject + inf. + ... باقى السؤال ?

The prefix البادئه

[dis - il - ir] = not like → dislike legal → illegal regular → irregular

Practice تدرب على كيفية التعامل مع السؤال

Sentence	Correction	Reason
1 She ..... [don't] help her mother.	doesn't	نستخدم [doesn't] مع الاسم المفرد في النفى فى زمن المضارع البسيط
2 ..... [Does] cars move quickly?	Do	نستخدم [Do] في السؤال مع الاسم الجمع
3 Amira and Adam ..... [doesn't] clean the trash.	don't	نستخدم [don't] مع الاسم الجمع في زمن المضارع
4 Nada ..... [likes] pizza. It is unhealthy.	dislikes	نستخدم البادئة [-dis] مع الفعل لتعطى معنى [not] لأن معنى الجملة أنها لا تحب لوجود [unhealthy]

Master أتقن طريقة حل السؤال

Write the reason. ◄ معرفة الطالب لسبب الإجابة يؤكد استيعابه للقاعدة المطلوبة.

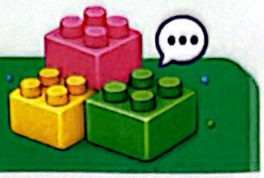
1 It is ..... [legal] to park in front of the hospital.	illegal	.....
2 ..... [Does] we use bins everywhere ?	Do	.....
3 Cars don't ..... [moves] quickly near schools.	move	.....
4 Some people ..... [doesn't] use trash bins.	don't	.....

Write the correction. ◄ اكتب التصحيح.

1 ..... [Does] you volunteer at the community park?	.....	الجملة فى صيغة سؤال والفاعل [you] جمع
2 He ..... [don't] throw trash in the bin.	.....	الجملة فى صيغة النفى والفاعل مفرد [he] فى زمن المضارع البسيط
3 ..... [Do] she go to school on foot ?	.....	الجملة فى صيغة سؤال والفاعل مفرد [she] فى زمن المضارع البسيط
4 Does he ..... [plays] tennis on Fridays ?	.....	نستخدم الفعل بدون إضافات في صيغة السؤال بعد [Does]

Scanned with CamScanner

3 Sentence Building



الهدف من هذا الجزء تعلم كيف تكون وترتب جمل وأسئلة.

١ الجملة الخبرية

1 Subject Detective

مين صاحب الفعل؟

ابحث عن الفاعل

أمثلة من الجمل:

1. Women
   فاعل الجملة الثانية
2. Egypt
   فاعل الجملة السادسة

الفاعل هو الشخص أو الشيء الذي يقوم بالفعل.

1. problems - community - **Our** - many - has.
2. stylish - wear - dresses - **Women**.
3. culture - proud of - are - **Egyptians** - their.
4. helps - traffic - **The bus** - reduce.
5. the park - **They** - Friday - clean - on.
6. two - regions - **Egypt** - special - has.

	١ فاعل	٢ فعل	٣ باقى الجملة.
1.	Our community		
2.			
3.			
4.		helps	
5.			
6.		has	

2 Verb Hunter

بيعمل إيه؟

ابحث عن الفعل

أمثلة من الجمل:

1. has
   فعل الجملة الأولى
2. clean
   فعل الجملة الخامسة

الفعل هو الحركة أو الحدث في الجملة.

٢ الجملة الاستفهامية

3 Helper Team

مين بيساعدنا؟

الأفعال المساعدة

Do

تستخدم مع:

I, you, we, they

Does

تستخدم مع:

he, she, it

الأفعال المساعدة تأتي قبل الفاعل في السؤال.

1. he - **What** - plant - does ?
2. with - your - you - family - **How** - celebrate - do ?
3. plant - **Do** - trees - you ?
4. Amira - does - **What** - with - clothes - do ?

	١ كلمة استفهام	٢ فعل مساعد	٣ فاعل	٤ فعل	٥ باقى السؤال ؟
1.		does			
2.					
3.			you		
4.					

4 The Wh-Team

نسأل ازاى؟

أدوات الاستفهام

- How [كيف]: للسؤال عن الحالة.
- What [ما/ماذا]: للسؤال عن شيء.

أداة الاستفهام تأتي دائمًا في بداية السؤال.

Scanned with CamScanner

4 Build Your Topic

اكتب موضوعك خطوة بخطوة

1. Word Bank

قُم بقراءة المفردات اللغوية وتعلم كيفية استخدامها فى جُمل.

▸ **Use the words in the table to make sentences.**

Subject	Verb	rest of the sentence
Life	is	different in Upper Egypt.
Men	wear	galabeyas.
Families	sing	traditional songs.
I	plant	trees.
My sister	volunteers	at the community park.
We	clean	trash from the streets.

2. Sentence Machine

قُم بترتيب الجُمل التالية لتكون جُمل مناسبة عند كتابة فقرات إنشائية.

▸ **Put the words in the correct order to form sentences.**

1. different - Upper Egypt - is - **Life** - in.

2. galabeyas - **Men** - wear.

3. songs - sing - **Families** - traditional.

4. trees - **I** - plant.

5. at - volunteers - the community park - **My sister**.

6. the streets - **We** - from - clean - trash.

3. Make your own paragraph

قُم بقراءة الجُمل [٦] السابقة ثم تصنيفها على حسب كل فقرة إنشائية مطلوب كتابتها من الفقرات التالية.

Write a paragraph about life in Upper Egypt.

Write a paragraph about helping the community.

Scanned with CamScanner

5 Important Topics

تعتبر مهارة الكتابة من المهارات الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع لذا يجب استخدام جمل وأفكار مترابطة. قم بقراءة هذه الجمل لتساعدك على التعامل مع مهارة الكتابة [٢٥ جملة].

Done

1 Helping our community

It's good to help our community[1]. We clean trash from the streets[2]. We plant trees[3]. We feed the dogs and cats[4]. We volunteer at the community park[5]. We help our neighbors[6].

Reading

2 Problems and solutions in our community

There are many problems in our community[7]. The first problem is traffic[8]. Cars don't move quickly in the morning[9]. We can use fewer cars[10]. The second problem is trash[11]. Some people don't put trash in bins[12]. It's good to put new bins everywhere[13].

3 Culture in Egypt

Egypt has two special regions : the Delta and Upper Egypt[14]. Each region has its traditions[15]. In the Delta region, people celebrate the Spring Festival[16]. In Upper Egypt, people celebrate the sugar cane harvest[17]. In the Delta, farmers grow rice and cotton[18]. In Upper Egypt, people weave colorful carpets by hand[19].

4 Our community's history

Many years ago, our neighborhood was different[20]! There was a beautiful old market with wooden stalls[21]. People sold fresh fruits and vegetables[22]. Everyone knew their neighbors[23]. Children played safely in the streets[24]. There was even a small train station[25].

From Sentences to Topics

- A Start with a capital letter.
- Use the correct tense.
- Put the words in the correct order.
- End with a full stop.

Scanned with CamScanner

Review through the Exam on Unit 2

مراجعة الوحدة من خلال اختبارات المحافظات وكتاب الطالب والتقييمات

15 Vocabulary

أهم 15 مفردة لغوية وردت فى كتاب الطالب والتقييمات والمحافظات (التى تمكن الطالب من اجتياز أى امتحان).

clean	ينظف	problem	مشكلة	air pollution	تلوث الهواء
feed	يطعم	bin	سلة مهملات	trash	قمامة
plant	يزرع	traffic	حركة مرور	crafts	حرف يدوية
collect	يجمع	region	منطقة / إقليم	solutions	حلول
volunteer	يتطوع	weave	ينسج	celebrate	يحتفل

15 Vocabulary through the Exam

جمل مختارة على المفردات اللغوية من الأسئلة الأكثر شيوعاً فى كتاب الطالب والتقييمات والاختبارات السابقة.
ذاكرها وهتقابلها كثير فى الامتحان.

1. He cleans[1] trash from the streets with his friends.
2. Soad is a kind girl. She likes to feed[2] animals.
3. We plant[3] trees in the park.
4. He collects[4] clothes and gives them to poor people.
5. Many people like to volunteer[5] at the community park.
6. Trash is a big problem[6] in my city.
7. You should put trash in the bin[7].
8. Cars move quickly in the evening because there's less traffic[8].
9. Egypt has two special regions[9] : the Delta and Upper Egypt.
10. Some people weave[10] colorful carpets by hand.
11. We cycle to school to stop air pollution[11].
12. I collect trash[12] from the garden.
13. Weaving carpets is one of the most important crafts[13].
14. We have good solutions[14] to solve the problem of traffic.
15. We celebrate[15] Eid Al-Fitr with our families.

[1] القاهرة - الزاوية	[2] كتاب التقييمات	[3] الجيزة - الهرم	[4] أسوان - إدفو	[5] الإسكندرية - الجمرك
[6] الغربية - غرب طنطا	[7] كتاب التقييمات	[8] الدقهلية - بلقاس	[9] دمياط - عزبة البرج	[10] المنوفية - تلا
[11] القليوبية - بنها	[12] كتاب الطالب	[13] الفيوم - إبشواى	[14] البحيرة - الدلنجات	[15] كتاب التقييمات

Scanned with CamScanner

Language

القواعد اللغوية الهامة التى وردت فى كتاب الطالب والتقييمات والمحافظات
[التى تمكن الطالب من اجتياز أى امتحان]

The Present Simple Tense : زمن المضارع البسيط :

Negative statement : فاعل + don't / doesn't + inf. مصدر الفعل .....

Interrogative : Do / Does + فاعل + inf. مصدر الفعل ... ?

Language through the Exam

جمل مختارة على القواعد اللغوية من الأسئلة الأكثر شيوعاً فى كتاب الطالب والتقييمات والاختبارات السابقة.
ذاكرها وهتقابلها كثير فى الامتحان.

1. She doesn't need to use cars every day.
2. Does Sally like ice-cream ?
3. Do you clean your room every day ?
4. We don't like apples.
5. Does Ahmed have a bike ?

[كتاب الطالب / كتاب التقييمات / القاهرة - الشرابية / الغربية - سمنود / القليوبية - بنها]

Reading & Writing through the Exam

الموضوعات الأكثر شيوعًا فى كتاب الطالب والتقييمات والاختبارات السابقة. ذاكرها وهتقابلها كثير فى الامتحان.

1. Read and write.

Helping the community

We can do many things to help our **community**. I clean **trash** from the streets with my friends. I **plant trees** in the park. Sometimes, I **feed** the dogs and cats. I **collect** clothes and give them to people who need them. When we all help, we make our community great.

Vocabulary

استخرج المعنى من النص واكتبه :

.....	يطعم
.....	يجمع
.....	مجتمع
.....	يزرع الاشجار
.....	القمامة

2. Reorder and write.

1. feed - I - dogs - cats - and.
.....
2. the park - trees - plant - I - in.
.....
3. clean - I - from - trash - the streets.
.....

3. Write about

- Helping the community

.....
.....
.....
.....

Scanned with CamScanner

Sample Test 3

On Unit 2

نصوص الاستماع والتقييمات في نهاية الكتاب

اختبار المعاصر

1 Listen and write [T] True or [F] False. استمع إلى معلمك واكتب [T] صح أو [F] خطأ.

1. Egypt has four special regions. [ ]
2. Each region has its traditions and culture. [ ]
3. The two places have some differences. [ ]
4. Egyptians are proud of their clothes. [ ]

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The galabeya is one of the ..... outfits in Egypt.
   a. new b. modern c. traditional d. healthy
2. Every morning, Sara ..... her cats.
   a. feeds b. plants c. shares d. buys
3. ..... you walk to school every day?
   a. Do b. Are c. Does d. Is
4. Ali ..... like to swim in the pool.
   a. don't b. doesn't c. isn't d. wasn't
5. She ..... to help in the community park.
   a. don't volunteer b. volunteers
   c. volunteering d. volunteer
6. In Egypt, people ..... colorful carpets by hand.
   a. feed b. weave c. plant d. share

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

volunteer – traffic – buses – move – cycle

Our community has many problems. One of these problems is the [1] ..... . Cars don't [2] ..... quickly in the morning, especially near schools. Some people think we can solve this problem. We should take public transportation, like the metro and [3] ..... . We can also [4] ..... or walk to near places.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

March 15, 2025

Dear diary,

Today, Grandpa told me amazing stories about our community's history. Fifty years ago, our neighborhood was very different! Where our big supermarket stands now, there was a beautiful **old** market with wooden stalls. People sold fresh fruits and vegetables every morning there.

Scanned with CamScanner

The tall buildings weren't here then. Instead, there were small houses with beautiful gardens. Everyone knew their neighbors, and children played safely in the streets. There was even a small train station where our park is now! Grandpa showed me old photos.

Yours truly,

Hana

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. This text is about "Our ..... ".
   a. Egyptian food b. community's history
   c. traditional clothes d. beautiful school
2. The opposite of the underlined word "**old**" is "....." .
   a. new b. different c. huge d. lazy

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Where did people sell fresh fruits and vegetables ?

.....

4. What did Grandpa show Hana ?

.....

5. Summarize the text in one sentence.

.....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. Our teacher ..... **(don't)** give us homework on holidays.
2. ..... **(Do)** Ehab go running in the morning ?
3. Do you ..... **(feeds)** the fish every day ?
4. Shaza doesn't ..... **(uses)** plastic bottles.

6 Punctuate the following.

1. what stories do old buildings tell us

.....

2. when we all help, we make our community great

.....

7 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below.

How to stop air pollution

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Guiding words :

• plastic • cycle • trees

.....

.....

Scanned with CamScanner

Sample Test 4

On Unit 2

نصوص الاستماع والتقييمات في نهاية الكتاب

اختبار مجمع من كتاب الطالب والتقييمات والاختبارات السابقة

1 Listen and write [T] True or [F] False. استمع إلى معلمك واكتب [T] صح أو [F] خطأ.

1. It is good to help our community. ☐
2. We can feed the dogs and cats. ☐
3. We can volunteer at the community park. ☐
4. We can collect bottles and give them to people who need them. ☐ [الإسماعيلية - القصاصين ٢٠٢٦]

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. AB She ..... cats in the street.
   a. walks b. sleeps c. feeds d. wears
2. Weaving carpets is one of the most important ..... . [السويس - جنوب السويس ٢٠٢٦]
   a. rules b. outfits c. habits d. crafts
3. I want to ..... at a local hospital during the summer holiday. [قنا - نجع حمادى ٢٠٢٦]
   a. catch b. protect c. throw d. volunteer
4. SB We ..... go to school on Fridays.
   a. doesn't b. don't c. aren't d. isn't
5. ..... Amira drink milk with her breakfast? [كفر الشيخ - الرياض ٢٠٢٦]
   a. Are b. Have c. Does d. Do
6. She ..... like to see trash on the streets. [القاهرة - المعادى ٢٠٢٦]
   a. doesn't b. don't c. isn't d. aren't

3 SB Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

community – volunteer – stop – plastic – plant

Air pollution is a very dangerous problem. There are many ways to (1) ..... air pollution. We should (2) ..... trees in our community. We should keep our (3) ..... clean. We should use less (4) ..... and walk to school. [القليوبية - الخانكة ٢٠٢٦]

4 AB Read the text and answer the questions.

My name is Ahmed. I live in Cairo. I have a lot of problems in my community. One of these problems is traffic. There are many cars and buses on the roads. This makes traffic very slow. We wait for a long time in traffic. I am always late for work. The traffic is a very dangerous problem. My neighbors and I decided to use buses or bicycles instead of our private cars.

Scanned with CamScanner

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Ahmed lives in ..... .

a. Giza b. Luxor c. Cairo d. Sohag

2. Ahmed is always ..... for work.

a. busy b. late c. lazy d. slow

B. Answer the following questions.

3. How did Ahmed and his neighbors solve traffic problem ?

.....

4. Do you have traffic problems in your community ?

.....

5. What did Ahmed and his neighbors decide ?

.....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. Dalia doesn't ..... **(buys)** plastic bottles. [القليوبية - بنها ٢٠٢٦]
2. ..... **(Does)** they have a dog ? [كفر الشيخ - الرياض ٢٠٢٦]
3. Nourhan doesn't ..... **(goes)** to the club after school. [الجيزة - إمبابة ٢٠٢٦]
4. AB No, she doesn't ..... **(has)** any books.

6 Punctuate the following.

1. SB i feed the dogs and cats

.....

2. AB does Ahmed like cats

.....

7 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below.

Culture in Egypt مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Guiding words :

• traditions • regions • weave [القاهرة - مصر الجديدة ٢٠٢٦]

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Scanned with CamScanner

Sample Test 1 for Al-Azhar students On Unit 2

اختبار لطلاب الأزهر الشريف

نصوص الاستماع والتسجيلات في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer.

1. In the Delta, people make ..... .
   a. meals b. tools c. crafts d. clothes
2. In Upper Egypt, men often wear ..... .
   a. jackets b. turbans c. shirts d. pants
3. All Egyptians are ..... of their culture.
   a. funny b. angry c. worried d. proud

2 Read and complete the dialog.

park - community - plant - trash

Amr : What do you like doing on weekends ?
Hany : I like helping my [1] ..... .
Amr : How do you help your community ?
Hany : I clean [2] ..... from the streets.
Amr : Do you [3] ..... trees ?
Hany : Yes, I plant trees in the [4] ..... with my friends.
Amr : That's great.

3 Choose the correct answer.

1. She is going to a party. She wears a beautiful ..... .
   a. outfit b. tradition c. carpet d. craft
2. We have good solutions to ..... the problem of traffic.
   a. use b. plant c. feed d. solve
3. ..... she cook beans every day ?
   a. Are b. Do c. Does d. Is
4. He doesn't ..... the guitar.
   a. plays b. play c. playing d. played

4 Read and correct the underlined mistakes.

1. Do they volunteer in the community ?
   - Yes, they <u>don't</u>. [.....]
2. She <u>don't</u> like cold weather. [.....]
3. They <u>doesn't</u> forget their homework. [.....]
4. I don't <u>leaves</u> the water running when I brush my teeth. [.....]

5 Read the following passage, then answer the questions.

Egypt has two special regions : the Delta in the north and Upper Egypt in the south. Each region has its traditions and culture. In the Delta region, they celebrate the Spring Festival with colorful decorations and special foods. Farmers grow rice and cotton. Many people work in factories and make beautiful crafts. Women are known for making clothes.

A. Read and write (T) True or (F) False.

1. The Delta is in the south. [ ]
2. Each region has its traditions and culture. [ ]

B. Choose the correct answer.

3. Egypt has ..... special regions.
   a. two b. three c. four d. five
4. Farmers grow rice and ..... .
   a. metal b. plastic c. wood d. cotton
5. Women are known for making ..... .
   a. plastic b. clothes c. fields d. factories

6 Write a short paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences on.

"Life in Upper Egypt"

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

• different • pottery • traditional • galabeyas

Scanned with CamScanner

1 Listen and choose the correct answer.

1. We should ..... trees in our community.
   a. reduce b. break c. plant d. cut
2. We should keep our community ..... .
   a. clean b. weak c. bad d. noisy
3. We should use less ..... .
   a. food b. plastic c. vegetables d. energy

2 Read and complete the dialog.

volunteer - feed - help - community

Hana : How do you help the (1) ..... ?
Rania : I always (2) ..... at the community park. What about you ?
Hana : I (3) ..... the dogs and cats.
Rania : That's great! When we all (4) ....., we make our community great.

3 Choose the correct answer.

1. They ..... vegetables in the field.
   a. discuss b. feed c. volunteer d. plant
2. I ..... my birthday with my family and friends.
   a. clean b. collect c. celebrate d. reduce
3. I don't ..... near the school.
   a. lived b. live c. living d. lives
4. ..... Yara help her parents at home?
   a. Does b. Is c. Are d. Do

4 Read and correct the underlined mistakes.

1. **Do** Sally like fruits? [.....]
2. They **not eat** fast food. [.....]
3. Do you **studies** English every day? [.....]
4. Hala **don't** like dirty places. [.....]

5 Read the following passage, then answer the questions.

Omar loves spending time in the park **near** his house. Every Saturday, he and his friends clean trash from the ground. Sometimes, they plant small trees near the swings. Omar's sister also likes to help. She collects clothes at home and gives them to people who need them. Their neighbor, Mrs. Hoda, often feeds cats and dogs. Together, they all work hard to make their community better. Omar said, "We can change our town if we all help."

A. Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1. Omar hates spending time in the park. [ ]
2. Mrs. Hoda often feeds cats and dogs. [ ]

B. Choose the correct answer.

3. The opposite of the underlined word "**near**" is ".....".
   a. lazy b. small c. far d. missing
4. Omar and his friends plant small ..... in the park.
   a. rice b. trees c. flowers d. houses
5. Omar's sister collects ..... and gives them to people who need them.
   a. clothes b. books c. trees d. plants

6 Write a short paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences on.

"Life in the Delta region"

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

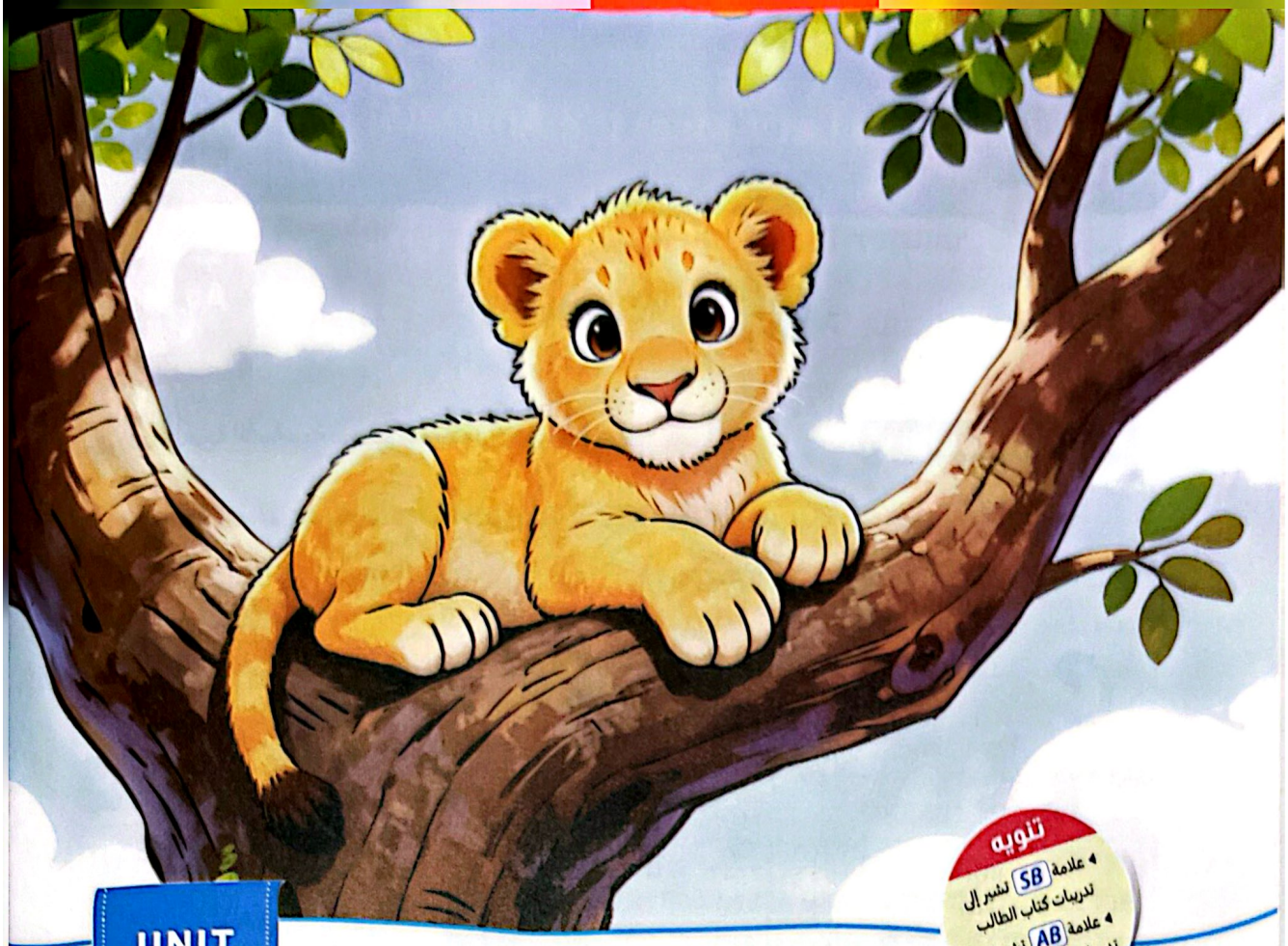
• celebrate • cotton • factories • clothes

Sample Test 2 for Al-Azhar students On Unit 2

اختبار لطلاب الأزهر الشريف

نصوص الاستماع والتقييمات فى نهاية الكتاب

Scanned with CamScanner



تنويه
- علامة SB تشير إلى تدريبات كتاب الطالب
- علامة AB تشير إلى تدريبات كتاب التقييمات

UNIT 3

Animals in Our World

الحيوانات فى عالمنا

Learning Outcomes

Listening
- Understand basic conversations about animals
- Discriminate between the consonant blends /fr/ , /dr/ , /pl/

- يفهم محادثات بسيطة عن الحيوانات
- يميز بين مزيج الحروف /fr/ , /dr/ و /pl/

Reading
- Identify animals' habits in a simple text
- Identify a short story with a moral lesson to get the main idea
- Discuss the moral lessons in a short story

- يتعرف على عادات الحيوانات فى نص بسيط
- يتعرف على قصة قصيرة تحتوى على مغزى أخلاقى للحصول على الفكرة الرئيسية
- يناقش الدروس المستفادة من قصة قصيرة

Speaking
- Describe animals and their daily habits
- Use comparative adjectives to compare different animals

- يصف الحيوانات وعاداتهم اليومية
- يستخدم صفات المقارنة للمقارنة بين الحيوانات المختلفة

Writing
- Draft a basic report about endangered animals
- Plan a research project about a forest animal

- يصيغ تقرير بسيط عن الحيوانات المهددة بالانقراض
- يخطط مشروع بحثى عن حيوان يعيش فى الغابة

Scanned with CamScanner

LESSON 1

Let's Meet the Animals!

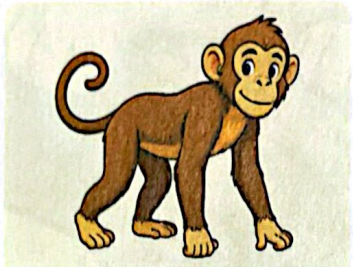
I Vocabulary

قاموس المعاصر الناطق

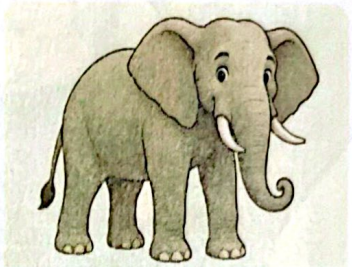
Key vocabulary المفردات اللغوية الأساسية موضع الامتحان [كما وردت فى كتاب الطالب]

Animals حيوانات

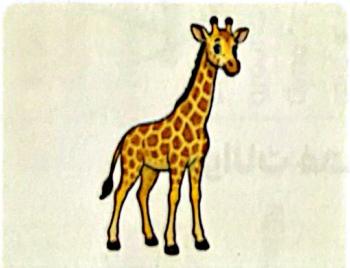
lion
أسد



monkey
قرد



elephant
فيل



giraffe
زرافة

zebra
حمار وحشى

bear
دب

forest park منترة الغابة / غابة مخصصة للتنزه	fur فراء [شعر كثيف]	claws مخالب [الحيوانات]
forest guide مرشد فى الغابة	coat الغطاء الخارجى [لجسم الحيوان]	trunk خرطوم الفيل

Adjectives

striped مخطط [به خطوط]	spotted منقط
sharp حاد	thick كثيف / سميك

Extra vocabulary المفردات اللغوية المساعدة فى التعامل مع الورقة الامتحانية

visitors زوار	TV program برنامج تليفزيونى	tail ذيل
leaves أوراق الشجر	neck رقبة	

Scanned with CamScanner

• Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular			Irregular		
Present		Past	Present		Past
hunt	يصطاد (حيوان)	hunted	catch	يصطاد	caught
climb	يتسلق	climbed	run	يجرى	ran
spray	يرش	sprayed	drink	يشرب	drank

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

the king of the jungle land	ملك الغابة	in groups	فى مجموعات
as well	أيضًا	work as	يعمل كـ
see ... up close	يرى ..... عن قرب	during the day	أثناء النهار

Main points on listening and reading texts نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع و القراءة

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
A day at the forest park	guide - visitors	The forest guide shows the visitors the animals at the forest park. مرشد الغابة يعرف الزوار على الحيوانات فى حديقة الغابة.
	monkeys - trees	The visitors see monkeys climbing trees. يرى الزوار القرود تتسلق الأشجار.
	lions - night	Lions often hunt at night. غالبًا ما تصطاد الأسود ليلًا.
	giraffes - leaves	Giraffes eat leaves from tall trees. تأكل الزرافات الأوراق من الأشجار الطويلة.

Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

▸ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات المعاصر

1. The fisherman ..... fish in the river.
   a. climbs b. runs c. drinks d. catches
2. The lion can ..... zebras.
   a. collect b. feed c. hunt d. help
3. The ..... is big and gray.
   a. elephant b. monkey c. giraffe d. lion
4. She is watching a TV ..... about animals.
   a. book b. match c. program d. map

Scanned with CamScanner

5. AB ..... are very good at climbing trees. [الجيزة - كرداسة ٢٠٢٦]

a. Elephants b. Giraffes c. Birds d. Monkeys

6. AB My dad is a ..... guide, he shows visitors the animals.

[التقييمات الشهرية - أكتوبر / الفيوم - اطسا ٢٠٢٦]

a. forest b. coat c. hospital d. sea

7. SB The zebra has a ..... coat. [القليوبية - بنها ٢٠٢٦]

a. striped b. spotted c. sharp d. yellow

8. The monkey has a long ..... . [التقييمات الشهرية - أكتوبر / المنيا - سمالوط ٢٠٢٦]

a. neck b. tail c. truck d. claw

9. The bear has sharp ..... . [قنا - نجع حمادى ٢٠٢٦]

a. feathers b. claws c. beaks d. wings

II Listening and Reading

• Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

Pop Quiz تدرب على قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع 05 min

A Day at the Forest Park
يوم فى منتزه الغابة

Omar and Nadia are talking about animals at the forest park.

يتحدث عمر ونادية عن الحيوانات فى منتزه الغابة.

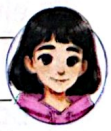
Hi, Nadia! What does your dad do at the forest park ?

مرحبًا نادية! ما هى وظيفة والدك فى منتزه الغابة؟

He works as a forest guide. He shows visitors the animals.

يعمل والدى كمرشد بالغابة. فهو يساعد الزوار على التعرف على الحيوانات.

Do you usually go with him ? هل تذهبين مع والدك؟



Sometimes. أحيانًا.

Scanned with CamScanner

What animals do visitors see ?

ما الحيوانات التي يراها الزوار ؟

Lots of them! They see elephants drinking water and monkeys climbing trees.

يرى الزوار الكثير من الحيوانات ! فهم يرون الأفيال تشرب المياه والقرود تتسلق الأشجار.

That's interesting! Do they see lions, too ?

هذا ممتع! هل يرى الزوار الأسود أيضًا ؟

Yes, and giraffes as well.

نعم، بالإضافة إلى رؤيتهم للزرافات.

Lions often hunt at night and sleep during the day. Giraffes eat leaves from tall trees.

الأسود في الأغلب تصطاد ليلًا وتنام أثناء النهار. الزراف تأكل أوراق الشجر من الأشجار الطويلة.

That's right! How do you know all of this ?

هذا صحيح! كيف تعرف كل هذا؟

I watch a TV program about animals.

انا اشاهد برنامج تليفزيوني عن الحيوانات.

Would you like to visit the forest park ?

هل ترغب في زيارة منتزه الغابة ؟

Sure! It must be amazing to see all those animals up close.

بالتأكيد ! لابد أن رؤية كل هذه الحيوانات عن قرب أمر مدهش.

Learn 1. What do giraffes eat ?

- Giraffes eat leaves from tall trees.

Practice 2. When do lions sleep ?

Scanned with CamScanner

• Read and learn. إقرأ وتعلم.

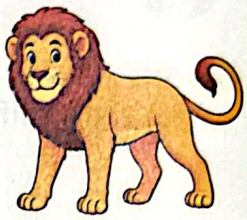
The animals and their description الحيوانات ووصفهم

1 The giraffe is tall and has a long neck. It eats leaves from trees up high. It has a spotted coat.

الزرافة هى حيوان طويل وله رقبة طويلة. تأكل الزرافة الأوراق من الأشجار المرتفعة. الزرافة لديها غطاء منقط على جسمها.

2 The lion is the king of the jungle land; it often hunts animals at night. It has yellow fur.

الأسد هو ملك الغابة. يقوم الأسد بصيد الحيوانات غالبًا فى الليل. لديه فراء أصفر اللون.



3 The bear has thick fur and sharp claws. It catches fish.

الدب له فراء كثيف ومخالب حادة. إنه يصطاد السمك.

4 The monkey is small and has a long tail. It climbs trees.

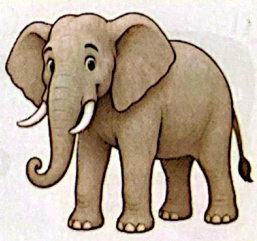
القرد صغير الحجم وله ذيل طويل. إنه يتسلق الأشجار.

5 The zebra has a striped coat. It runs in groups.

الحمار الوحشى له غطاء مخطط. إنه يجرى فى مجموعات.

6 The elephant is big and gray. It uses its trunk to spray water on its body.

الفيل كبير الحجم و رمادى اللون. يستخدم خرطومه ليقوم برش الماء على جسده.



Scanned with CamScanner

EL-MOASSER Exercises تدريبات المعاصر

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The ..... is the king of the jungle land.
   a. zebra b. bear c. elephant d. lion
2. The giraffe has a ..... coat.
   a. striped b. black c. spotted d. gray
3. The elephant ..... its trunk to drink water.
   a. to use b. using c. use d. uses
4. Some animals ..... thick fur.
   a. does b. has c. doesn't have d. don't have
5. My father works ..... a forest guide at the forest park.
   a. in b. as c. at d. on
6. Lions have yellow ..... .
   a. trunk b. jungle c. nose d. fur

2 Read the text and answer the questions.

Elephants are the largest animals on land. They live in Africa and Asia. They have **large** ears and a long trunk. They use their trunks to drink, eat and spray water on their bodies. Elephants eat leaves and grass.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The opposite of the underlined word "**large**" is "..... ".
   a. young b. old c. big d. small
2. Elephants use their ..... to drink water.
   a. teeth b. tails c. trunk d. toes

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Summarize the text in one sentence.
   .....
4. What do elephants eat?
   .....
5. Where do elephants live?
   .....

Scanned with CamScanner

SB, AB & Previous Exams

تدريبات كتاب الطالب والتقييمات والاختبارات السابقة

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False. استمع إلى معلمك واكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ.

1. Bears are wild animals. ☐
2. Bears are big and weak animals. ☐
3. Bears have thick fur. ☐
4. Bears can catch birds. ☐

[القاهرة - المطرية ٢٠٢٦]

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

climb - close - park - guide - visitors

My father's job is very interesting. He is a forest (1) ..... .
He works in a forest (2) ..... . There are a lot of animals there. His job is to show (3) ..... the animals. Many people visit the forest park to enjoy watching the animals up (4) ..... . [الجيزة - الهرم ٢٠٢٦]

3 Punctuate the following.

1. SB when do lions often hunt

.....

2. AB the bear has a thick fur

.....

4 AB Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below.

A day at the forest park مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Guiding words :

- animals
- elephants
- monkeys

.....

.....

.....

.....

Scanned with CamScanner

LESSON 2

Taking Care of Animals

I Vocabulary

قاموس المعاصر الناطق

Key vocabulary

المفردات اللغوية الأساسية موضع الامتحان [كما وردت فى كتاب الطالب]

pet	حيوان أليف	attention	اهتمام / عناية	challenges	تحديات/صعوبات
vet	طبيب بيطرى	owner	مالك	wild	البرية
forest officer	حارس الغابة	cage	قفص		

• Adjectives

fresh	طازج	safe	آمن	simple	بسيط
clean	نظيف	special	خاص / مميز	daily	يومى

Extra vocabulary

المفردات اللغوية المساعدة فى التعامل مع الورقة الامتحانية

care	رعاية	health	صحة	spaces	مساحات
wild animals	الحيوانات البرية	home	موطن		

• Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present		Past	Present		Past
reach	يصل إلى	reached	protect	يحمى	protected
check	يفحص	checked	create	ينشئ	created
face	يواجه	faced			

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

acts of kindness	أعمال طيبة / مواقف إنسانية	move around	يتجول / يتحرك
keep a rabbit	يربى ارنب	care for = take care of	يعتنى بـ

Main points on listening and reading texts نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع و القراءة

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Helping animals	stay - safe	Animals need our help to stay healthy and safe. تحتاج الحيوانات إلى مساعدتنا للحفاظ على صحتها وسلامتها.
	care - live	Each animal needs special care to live well. يحتاج كل حيوان إلى رعاية خاصة ليعيش بشكل جيد.

Scanned with CamScanner

homes - cities	Wild animals' homes are getting smaller because of new cities. أصبحت مواطن الحيوانات البرية أصغر بسبب المدن الجديدة.
pets - owners	Pets need daily care from their owners. تحتاج الحيوانات الأليفة إلى رعاية يومية من أصحابها.
animals - kindness	Everyone can help protect animals by showing kindness for them. يمكن للجميع المساعدة فى حماية الحيوانات عن طريق معاملتها بلطف.

Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

▸ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات المعاصر

1. Our teacher asked us a question to get our ..... .
   a. kindness b. attention c. book d. case
2. Noha faces many ....., so she has a difficult life.
   a. cities b. cages c. challenges d. hotels
3. Who is the ..... of this dog?
   a. challenge b. owner c. habit d. habitat
4. Giraffes need tall trees to ..... their food.
   a. reach b. make c. build d. feed
5. Lions live inside ..... in the zoo.
   a. mountains b. forests c. cages d. rivers

SB, AB & Previous Exams تدريبات كتاب الطالب والتقييمات والاختبارات السابقة

6. SB Everyone can help protect animals by showing ..... and caring for them.
   a. fear b. worry c. advice d. kindness
7. Animals need our help to stay ..... .
   a. sad b. angry c. safe d. tired

[التقييمات الشهرية - نوفمبر / الدقهلية - اجا ٢٠٢٦]

8. Elephants need big ..... to move around.
   a. food b. care c. space d. water

[التقييمات الشهرية - نوفمبر / القاهرة - منشأة ناصر ٢٠٢٦]

9. Vets check animals' ..... to keep them healthy. [القاهرة - عابدين ٢٠٢٦]
   a. kindness b. health c. voice d. challenges
10. SB Forest ..... work hard to protect animals' homes.
   a. insects b. animals c. officers d. birds
11. AB Pets need ..... care from their owners.
   a. monthly b. weekly c. yearly d. daily

Scanned with CamScanner

II Listening and Reading

Pop Quiz
تدرب
05 min
على قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

• **Look and read.** انظر واقرأ.

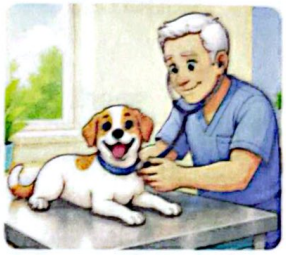
Helping Animals
مساعدة الحيوانات

Animals need our help to stay healthy and safe. Some animals live in the wild, while others live in zoos or homes. Each animal needs **special**[1] care to live well.

Zoo animals need special attention. Elephants need bigger **spaces**[2] than monkeys to move around. Lions eat a lot of food to stay stronger than other animals. Giraffes need taller trees to reach their food. Vets often **check**[3] their health.

Wild animals face different challenges. Their homes are getting smaller because of new cities. They need **clean water**[4] and safe places to live. **Forest officers**[5] now work harder than before to protect these animals and their homes.

[1] خاص/مميز
[2] مساحات
[3] يفحص
[4] مياه نظيفة
[5] حراس الغابة



Pets need **daily care**[6] from their owners. Dogs need **exercise**[7]. Rabbits eat fresh vegetables, and they are healthier than other animals. Birds need cleaner cages than other animals.

Everyone can help protect animals in simple ways. Small **acts of kindness**[8] make our world better. When we care for animals, we create a safer place for them. Being kind to animals teaches us to be better people. Together, we can make their lives happier and healthier.

[6] عناية يومية
[7] تمارين
[8] أعمال إنسانية

تحتاج الحيوانات إلى مساعدتنا لتبقى بصحة جيدة وفي أمان. تعيش بعض الحيوانات في البرية، بينما تعيش حيوانات أخرى في حدائق الحيوان أو في المنازل. وكل حيوان بحاجة إلى رعاية خاصة ليعيش بشكل جيد.

تحتاج الحيوانات التي تعيش في حديقة الحيوان إلى اهتمام خاص. تحتاج الأفيال إلى مساحات أكبر من القرود لتتحرك فيها. تأكل الأسود كميات كبيرة من الطعام لتبقى أقوى من باقي الحيوانات. تحتاج الزرافات إلى أشجار طويلة لتصل إلى طعامها. يقوم الأطباء البيطريون بفحص صحة هذه الحيوانات.

تواجه الحيوانات البرية صعوبات مختلفة. فتسبب بناء المدن الجديدة في قلة الموطن التي تعيش به. تحتاج هذه الحيوانات إلى مياه نظيفة وأماكن آمنه للمعيشة. يعمل حراس الغابات الآن بجهد أكبر من ذي قبل لحماية هذه الحيوانات ومواطنها.

تحتاج الحيوانات الأليفة إلى رعاية يومية من أصحابها. فتحتاج الكلاب إلى التمارين. تأكل الأرانب الخضروات الطازجة، وهي بصحة أفضل من الحيوانات الآخرى. تحتاج الطيور إلى أقفاص أنظف مما تحتاج إليه الحيوانات الآخرى.

يمكن للجميع المساعدة في حماية الحيوانات بطرق بسيطة. فالأعمال الإنسانية البسيطة تجعل عالمنا أفضل. عندما نعتني بالحيوانات ننشئ مكانًا أكثر أمانًا لهم. ويعلمنا اللطف مع الحيوانات أن نكون أشخاصًا أفضل. معًا، يمكننا أن نتمتع بحياة أكثر سعادة وصحة.

Demonstrate understanding of specific details.
وضح فهمك للتفاصيل المحددة.

Learn 1. Why do lions eat a lot of food ?
- To stay stronger than other animals.

Practice 2. Why are the homes of wild animals getting smaller ?
.....

Scanned with CamScanner

III Language in use

1 Adjectives ١. الصفات

١. تستخدم الصفة لوصف الاسم وتأتى قبله : ← ex.:- He is a tall man.

٢. تأتى الصفة بعد (verb to be) : ← ex.:- The whale is big.

2 Comparative ٢. صيغة المقارنة

Short adjectives الصفات القصيرة

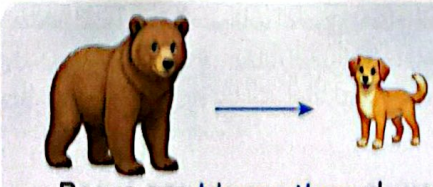
Usage : الاستخدام - We use comparative adjectives to compare two people, things, animals, etc.

نستخدم صفات المقارنة للمقارنة بين شخصين، شيئين، حيوانين، ... إلخ.

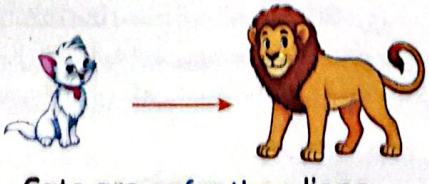
Formation : التكوين → Short adjective الصفة القصيرة + er + than

short adj. صفة قصيرة + er + than

- معظم الصفات: short يضاف إليها + er → shorter
- حرف متحرك + حرف ساكن فى الصفات ذات مقطع واحد big: يضاعف الحرف الأخير + er → bigger
- صفة ذات مقطع واحد منتهية بـ (- e) مثل (safe): يضاف للصفة (+ r) → safer
- صفة ذات مقطع واحد منتهية بـ (- y) مثل (healthy): حول (- y) لـ (- i) وأضف (+ er) healthier



Bears are bigger than dogs.



Cats are safer than lions.

Scanned with CamScanner

Pop Quiz on Language in use

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات المعاصر

1. Amira is ..... than her sister.
   a. young b. youngest c. as young d. younger
2. Their life is ..... than before.
   a. happy b. happiest c. happier d. as happy
3. Elephants are heavier ..... lions.
   a. then b. than c. that d. these

SB, AB & Previous Exams تدريبات كتاب الطالب والتقييمات والاختبارات السابقة

4. AB The cat is ..... than the mouse. (المنيا - أبو قرقاص ٢٠٢٦)
   a. big b. bigger c. biggest d. as big
5. AB Noha is ..... than Nashwa. (التقييمات الشهرية - نوفمبر - سوهاج - جهينة ٢٠٢٦)
   a. short b. a short c. shorter d. shortest
6. He is ..... than his brother. (التقييمات الشهرية - نوفمبر - كفر الشيخ - الرياض ٢٠٢٦)
   a. tall b. taller c. tallest d. the tall
7. SB A zebra is shorter ..... a giraffe. (المنوفية - منوف ٢٠٢٦)
   a. the b. then c. that d. than

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات المعاصر

1. Salma is ..... **[old]** than Reem.
2. Magdy is taller ..... **[then]** Injy.
3. Camels are ..... **[strong]** than goats.

SB, AB & Previous Exams تدريبات كتاب الطالب والتقييمات والاختبارات السابقة

4. AB Sally is ..... **[lazy]** than Rana.
5. AB Fruit is ..... **[healthy]** than sweets.
6. English is ..... **[easy]** than Arabic.

(التقييمات الشهرية - نوفمبر - السويس - الجنابن ٢٠٢٦)

7. SB The cat is ..... **[small]** than the dog. (الدقهلية - طلخا ٢٠٢٦)

Scanned with CamScanner

General Exercises On Lesson 2

نصوص الاستماع والتقييمات في نهاية الكتاب

EL-MOASSER Exercises تدريبات المعاصر

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. My cat is ..... than my neighbor's cat.
   a. fat b. fatter c. fattest d. as fat
2. Some animals like lions and tigers live in the ..... .
   a. sea b. river c. wild d. ocean
3. Asser is taller ..... his brother.
   a. the b. that c. than d. then
4. Showing ..... to animals can protect them.
   a. crops b. kindness c. rocks d. cages
5. Rabbits are ..... than turtles.
   a. as fast b. fastest c. faster d. fast
6. Babies need special ..... to stay safe.
   a. attention b. work c. animals d. bus

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

protect – clean – happier – homes – officers

Wild animals face different challenges. Their [1] ..... are getting smaller because of new cities. They need [2] ..... water and safe places to live in. Forest [3] ..... now work harder than before to [4] ..... these animals and their homes. Everyone can help protect animals in simple ways.

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. My grandfather is ..... **[old]** than my father.
2. She is shorter ..... **[the]** her sister.
3. Elephants are ..... **[big]** than monkeys.
4. Cats are ..... **[safe]** than lions.

4 Punctuate the following.

1. he keeps a rabbit at home

.....

2. how do vets help animals

.....

Scanned with CamScanner

General Exercises On Lesson 2

نصوص الاستماع والتقييمات في نهاية الكتاب

SB, AB & Previous Exams

تدريبات كتاب الطالب والتقييمات والاختبارات السابقة

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False. استمع إلى معلمك و اكتب (T) صح او (F) خطأ.

1. Animals need our help to stay in danger. [ ]
2. Everyone can help protect animals. [ ]
3. When we care for animals, we create a safer place for them. [ ]
4. Being kind to animals teaches us to be better people. [ ]

[الجيزة - حدائق أكتوبر ٢٠٢٦]

2 Read the text and answer the questions.

Zoo animals need special attention. Elephants need bigger spaces than monkeys to move around. Lions eat a lot of food to stay stronger than other animals. Giraffes need taller trees to reach their food .

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Giraffes need taller ..... .
   a. seats b. senses c. trees d. fans
2. Elephants need ..... spaces than monkeys.
   a. smaller b. heavier c. bigger d. taller

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What do zoo animals need?

   .....

4. How can lions stay stronger than others?

   .....

5. Summarize the text in one sentence.

   .....

[الغربية - غرب طنطا ٢٠٢٦]

3 AB Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below.

Taking care of animals مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Guiding words :

- space
- exercise
- cages

.....

.....

.....

Scanned with CamScanner

Accumulative Dictation

إملاء تراكمى على الدروس

اختبار لقياس وتقييم مدى استيعاب الطالب للمفردات اللغوية

LESSON 1

.....	دب	forest park	.....
.....	حمار وحشى	coat	.....
.....	زرافه	thick	.....

LESSON 2

.....	مالك	attention	.....
.....	قفص	challenges	.....
.....	حيوان أليف	vet	.....

LESSONS 1&2

تدريب تراكمى على المفردات اللغوية للدروس الأول والثانى

1. Complete the following sentences using the words from the box.

elephant - Forest officers - wild - lion

1. The ..... has yellow fur.
2. The ..... is big and gray
3. Some animals live in the ..... .
4. ..... work in forests and keep animals safe.

2. Read and write.

• **Conjugation of verbs** تصريف الأفعال

Present		Past
.....	يصطاد	caught
spray	يرش	.....
.....	يشرب	drank
run	يجرى	.....

Present		Past
face	يواجه	.....
.....	يفحص	checked
reach	يصل إلى	.....
.....	يحمى	protected

Scanned with CamScanner

LESSON 3

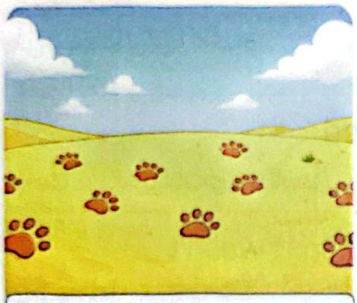
Story Time : The Old Lion and The Fox

I Vocabulary

فاموس المعاصر الناطق

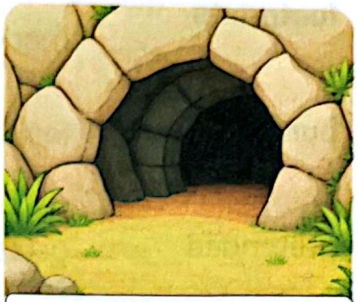
Key vocabulary

المفردات اللغوية الأساسية موضع الامتحان [كما وردت فى كتاب الطالب]



footprints آثار الأقدام

fluffy tail ذيل كثيف



cave كهف

mistakes أخطاء	fox ثعلب	trick خدعة/يخدع

Extra vocabulary

المفردات اللغوية المساعدة فى التعامل مع الورقة الامتحانية

sick مريض	marks علامات	mountain جبل
wise حكيم	weak ضعيف	surface سطح

• Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present		Past
pretend	يتظاهر	pretended
die	يموت	died
enter	يدخل	entered
notice	يلاحظ	noticed

Irregular

Present		Past
stand	يقف	stood
understand	يفهم	understood
catch	يصطاد	caught

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

call out	يصيح/ينادى بصوت عالٍ	one by one	واحد بعد الآخر / واحد تلو الآخر
come out	يخرج من	run away	يهرب
in danger	فى خطر		

Scanned with CamScanner

• Study these definitions ادرس تلك التعريفات

Word الكلمة	Definition التعريف
fox ثعلب	a small, quick animal with a fluffy tail and red-brown fur حيوان سريع وصغير الحجم ذو ذيل كثيف وفراء لونه بنى محمر
cave كهف	a large hole in a mountain where animals can live حفرة كبيرة داخل جبل تعيش بها الحيوانات
footprints آثار الأقدام	marks left by feet هى علامات تركتها الأقدام
hunt يصطاد	look for and catch animals for food يبحث عن الحيوانات ويصطادها من أجل الطعام
pretended تظاهر	acted like something was true when it wasn't يتصرف وكأن شيئًا ما صحيح وهو فى الحقيقة ليس كذلك
lay down استلقى	put yourself on a surface, like the ground or a bed تمدد على سطح مثل الأرض أو سرير
The moral الدرس المستفاد	the lesson a story teaches us. It helps us understand what is right and what is wrong هو درس تُعلمه لنا قصة ما. هذا يساعدنا على فهم ما هو صواب أو خطأ

Main points on listening and reading texts نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة.

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
The Old Lion and the Fox	old lion - hunt	The old lion couldn't hunt anymore. لم يستطع الأسد العجوز الصيد بعد الآن.
	pretend - cave	The old lion pretended to be sick in his cave. تظاهر الأسد العجوز بأنه مريض داخل كهفه.
	enter - return	Many animals entered the lion's cave and never returned. دخلت حيوانات كثيرة إلى كهف الأسد ولم تعد أبدًا.
	wise - footprints	A wise fox noticed the one-way footprints. لاحظ ثعلب حكيم آثار الأقدام التى تسير فى اتجاه واحد.
	cave – run away	The wise fox didn't go into the cave and it ran away safely. لم يدخل الثعلب الحكيم إلى الكهف وهرب بأمان.

UNIT 3

Scanned with CamScanner

Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

• **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات المعاصر

1. The fox has a ..... tail with soft fur.
   a. hard b. fluffy c. dry d. fast
2. To ..... means to act like something is true when it isn't.
   a. pretend b. hunt c. save d. help
3. The dog ..... down on the ground and slept.
   a. saw b. lay c. replied d. heard
4. To ..... means to look for and catch animals for food.
   a. protect b. care c. hunt d. create

SB, AB & Previous Exams تدريبات كتاب الطالب والتقييمات والاختبارات السابقة

5. SB ..... are marks left by feet.
   [التقييمات الشهرية - نوفمبر - بورسعيد - شمال بورسعيد ٢٠٢٦]
   a. Fingerprints b. Photos c. Footprints d. Mistakes
6. The ..... fox understands the lion's trick. [دمياط - فارسكور ٢٠٢٦]
   a. healthy b. true c. clean d. wise
7. SB A ..... is a large hole in a mountain.
   a. surface b. floor c. cave d. cage
8. We should learn from the ..... of others.
   a. mistakes b. habitats c. animals d. care
   [التقييمات الشهرية - نوفمبر - قنا - دشنا ٢٠٢٦]

II Listening and Reading

Pop Quiz تدرب على قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

The Old Lion and The Fox
الأسد العجوز و الثعلب

The Beginning

Once there was an old lion who couldn't hunt anymore. He was too weak to catch animals for food. So, he thought of a clever trick.

The lion went into his cave and pretended to be very sick. He lay down and called out, "Oh! I am so sick! Please, come visit me before I die!"

Scanned with CamScanner

The Middle

Many animals heard about the sick lion. One by one, they went into his cave to visit him. But none of them came out! The lion was catching and eating each visitor.

A wise fox came near the cave. He saw many footprints going in, but none coming out. The fox stood at the cave entrance and said, "Hello, dear lion! How are you feeling ?"

"Oh, dear fox!" said the lion. "I am very sick. Please come in and visit me!"

The End

The fox looked at the footprints again and replied, "Thank you, but I can see that many animals went into your cave, but none came out. I learn from the mistakes of others!"

And with that, the wise fox ran away safely, laughing at the lion's trick.

ذات مرة كان هناك أسـد عجوز لم يعد يسـتطيع الصيد. كان ضعيفًا جدًا لدرجة أنه لا يستطيع صيد الحيوانات للحصول على طعامه. لذلك، فكر الأسد العجوز في حيلة ذكية.

دخل الأسد إلى كهفه وتظاهر بأنه مريض للغاية. استلقى الأسد العجوز وصاح: "أوه! أنا مريض جدًا! من فضلكم، تعالوا لزيارتي قبل أن أموت!"

سمعت العديد من الحيوانات عن مرض الأسد. وبدأوا يأتون واحدًا تلو الآخر إلى كهفه لزيارته. لكن لم يخرج أي منهم! فقد كان الأسد يمسك بكل زائر ويأكله.

اقترب ثعلب حكيم من الكهف. فرأى آثار أقدام كثيرة تدخل إلى الكهف، ولكن لا توجد آثار تخرج منه. وقف الثعلب عند مدخل الكهف وقال: "مرحبًا، عزيزي الأسد! كيف حالك ؟" قال الأسد: «أوه، عزيزي الثعلب ! أنا مريض جدًا. من فضلك، ادخل لزيارتي!»

نظر الثعلب إلى آثار الأقدام مرة أخرى وأجاب: «شكرًا لك، لكنني أرى أن العديد من الحيوانات دخلت كهفك، ولم يخرج أي منها. أنا أتعلم من أخطاء الآخرين!»

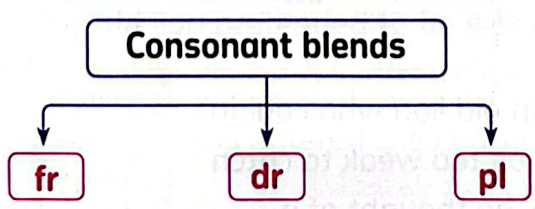
بهذه الطريقة ركض الثعلب الحكيم مبتعدًا بأمان، وهو يضحك على خدعة الأسد.

The moral lesson of the story : الدرس المستفاد من القصة:

It's important to learn from the mistakes of others. من المهم أن تتعلم من أخطاء الآخرين.

III Pronunciation

Consonant blends



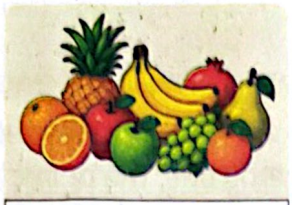
- When you blend, you join two or more sounds together to read a word, like "drum" and "fruit".

عند دمج الأصوات، يتم ضم صوتين أو أكثر معًا لقراءة الكلمة مثل كلمة "drum" و "fruit".

UNIT 3

Scanned with CamScanner

f + r = fr → The letters **fr** make the sound **/fr/**.



fruit فاكهة

frown عبوس

d + r = dr → The letters **dr** make the sound **/dr/**.

draw يرسم

drum طبلة

p + l = pl → The letters **pl** make the sound **/pl/**.

plant نبات

plane طائرة

Pop Quiz on Pronunciation

1 **Listen and write the missing letters.** نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1. _ _ uit
2. _ _ aw
3. _ _ ant
4. _ _ own

2 **Read and complete with "fr" , "dr" or "pl".**

1. I can hit the -- um easily.
2. She has a nice -- ant in her room.
3. Adam likes eating -- uit every day.

Scanned with CamScanner

General Exercises On Lesson 3

نصوص الاستماع والتقييمات في نهاية الكتاب

EL-MOASSER Exercises تدريبات المعاصر

1 Read the text and answer the questions.

An old tiger was too weak to hunt, so he made a trick. He pretended to be sick and called animals to visit him in his cave. One by one, the animals went inside the cave, but they never came out. A wise monkey saw many footprints going into the cave, but no footprint came out. The tiger asked the monkey to come inside and visit him. The monkey refused because he learned from the animals' mistakes. He ran away safely from the tiger.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The text is about " ..... ".
   a. Old elephant b. Old zebra c. Old man d. Old tiger
2. The opposite of the underlined word "weak" is " ..... ".
   a. strong b. noisy c. bad d. heavy

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What did the monkey see?
   .....
4. Why did the monkey refuse to come inside the cave?
   .....
5. Summarize the text in one sentence.
   .....

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

A

1. The fox is ..... [wise] than the lion.
2. Jackets are ..... [heavy] than shirts.
3. Bears' fur is ..... [thick] than camels' fur.
4. The cave is larger ..... [the] the hole.

B

1. Cities are ..... [noisy] than villages.
2. My room is ..... [clean] than yours.
3. The drum is ..... [loud] than the violin.
4. He is kinder to animals ..... [then] his friends.

3 Punctuate the following.

1. why did the lion trick the animals
   .....
2. the lion pretended to be sick
   .....

Scanned with CamScanner

General Exercises On Lesson 3

نصوص الاستماع والتقييمات في نهاية الكتاب

SB, AB & Previous Exams

تدريبات كتاب الطالب والتقييمات والاختبارات السابقة

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Many animals visited the sick lion in its ..... . (القلبوبية - الخصوص ٢٠٢٦)
   a. design b. station c. outfit d. cave
2. The lion is ..... than the rabbit. (القاهرة - الزيتون ٢٠٢٦)
   a. as strong b. strong c. the strongest d. stronger
3. The cat is ..... than the fox. (الدقهلية - غرب المنصورة ٢٠٢٦)
   a. nicer b. nice c. as nice d. nicest
4. SB The lion tricked the animals and ..... to be sick.
   a. remembered b. pretended c. hunted d. walked
5. My father is ..... than me. (كفر الشيخ - دسوق ٢٠٢٦)
   a. as wise b. wisest c. wise d. wiser
6. SB A ..... is a small, quick animal with red-brown fur.
   a. zebra b. bear c. giraffe d. fox

2 AB Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

mistakes – cave – pretended – sick – come out

The old lion (1) ..... to be very sick. Many animals came into the lion's (2) ..... to visit him but they didn't (3) ..... . The fox was very clever. He learned from the (4) ..... of others.

Language

يلا نرجع بسرعة نفتكر القواعد اللغوية في الوحدات السابقة

Present Simple tense

1. Affirmative : He / She / It + inf. + (s , es , ies) ....

Ex. : He **plays** football.

2. Negative : He / She / It + doesn't + inf. ....

I / We / You / They + don't + inf. ....

Ex. : They **don't play** football after school.

Scanned with CamScanner

LESSONS 4&5

- Writing
- Think and Create

I Vocabulary

Key vocabulary

المفردات اللغوية الأساسية موضع الامتحان [كما وردت فى كتاب الطالب]

endangered مهدد بالانقراض	disappearing الاختفاء	sea grass عشب البحر
the Arabian Leopard الفهد العربى	the Red Sea Dugong أطوم البحر الأحمر	species فصائل / أنواع
habitats مواطن / بيئات	fishing net شبكة صيد	sea animals حيوانات بحرية
		danger خطر

Extra vocabulary

المفردات اللغوية المساعدة فى التعامل مع الورقة الامتحانية

forever إلى الأبد	reason سبب	areas مناطق
the Middle East الشرق الأوسط	pollution تلوث	organization منظمة
facts حقائق	collage فن اللصق	gentle لطيف

• Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular		Irregular	
Present	Past	Present	Past
disappear يختفى	disappeared	build يبنى	built
remain يبقى/يتبقى	remained	eat يأكل	ate
act يتصرف	acted	teach يُدرس / يُعلم	taught

• Study these definitions ادرس تلك التعريفات

Word الكلمة	Definition التعريف
collage	An artwork made by cutting and pasting photos, paper, cloth, or drawings on a page هو عمل فنى يتم إنشاؤه عن طريق قص ولصق الصور أو الورق أو القماش أو الرسومات على صفحة

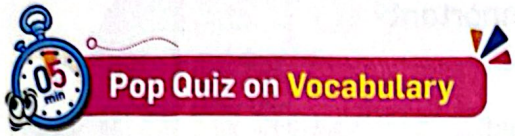
Main points on listening and reading texts نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع و القراءة

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Endangered animals	leopard - endangered	The Arabian Leopard is one of the most endangered animals in Egypt. الفهد العربى واحد من أكثر الحيوانات المهددة بالانقراض فى مصر.
	remain - wild	Less than 200 of these beautiful cats remain in the wild. بقى أقل من ٢٠٠ من هذه القطط الجميلة فى البرية.

UNIT 3

Scanned with CamScanner

dugong - grass	The Red Sea Dugong eats sea grass. يأكل أطوم البحر الأحمر الأعشاب البحرية.
in danger - nets	Dugongs are in danger because of pollution and fishing nets. تتعرض الأطوم للخطر بسبب التلوث وشباك الصيد.
create - help	We need to create safe areas to help endangered animals. نحتاج إلى إنشاء مناطق آمنة لمساعدة الحيوانات المهددة بالانقراض.



• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات المعاصر

1. There are many ..... of birds.
   a. species b. areas c. habitats d. grades
2. A little water ..... in the bottle.
   a. stops b. remains c. teaches d. protects
3. The ..... is a big wild cat.
   a. bear b. zebra c. leopard d. dugong
4. The Red Sea ..... is an endangered animal.
   a. Coast b. Beach c. Dugong d. Grass

SB, AB & Previous Exams تدريبات كتاب الطالب والتقييمات والاختبارات السابقة

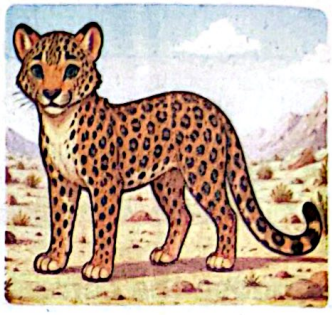
5. Animals are in ..... because of pollution.
   a. danger b. safety c. calm d. health
   (التقييمات الشهرية - نوفمبر - البحيرة - الدلنجات ٢٠٢٦)
6. Some animals are in danger of ..... forever. (الجيزة - العمرانية ٢٠٢٦)
   a. growing b. disappearing c. swimming d. flying
7. Fishermen catch dugongs in their fishing ..... (الغربية - شرق المحلة ٢٠٢٦)
   a. trains b. tricks c. holes d. nets
8. SB We need to create safe ..... to help endangered animals.
   a. grass b. nets c. areas d. facts

Scanned with CamScanner

II Listening and Reading

• **Listen and read.** استمع واقرأ.

Endangered Animals
الحيوانات المهددة بالانقراض



Many animals around the world are in danger of disappearing forever. These animals are called endangered **species**[1]. Here are some **important**[2] facts about endangered animals.

The Arabian Leopard is one of the most endangered animals in Egypt and the Middle East. Less than 200 of these **beautiful**[3] cats **remain**[4] in the wild. One reason is that these animals are in danger because people build houses in their **habitats**[5].

The Red Sea Dugong is another endangered animal in Egypt. These **gentle**[6] sea animals eat sea grass. They are in danger because of pollution and fishing nets.

To help these animals, we need to :

- protect their homes
- stop **pollution**[7]
- create safe areas
- teach people about them

If we don't act now, these **amazing**[8] animals could **disappear**[9] forever.

[1] أنواع / فصائل
[2] هام / مهم
[3] جميل
[4] يبقى / يتبقى
[5] مواطن
[6] لطيف
[7] تلوث
[8] مذهل / رائع
[9] يختفى

يوجد العديد من الحيوانات حول العالم مهددة بالاختفاء إلى الأبد. وتُسمى هذه الحيوانات بالفصائل المهددة بالانقراض. إليك بعض الحقائق الهامة عن الحيوانات المهددة بالانقراض.

الفهد العربى هو واحد من أكثر الحيوانات المهددة بالانقراض فى مصر والشرق الأوسط. يتبقى أقل من ٢٠٠ من هذه القطط الجميلة فى البرية. أحد أسباب أن هذه الحيوانات فى خطر لأن الناس يقومون ببناء منازل فى مواطنهم.

أطوم البحر فى البحر الأحمر هو حيوان آخر مهدد بالانقراض فى مصر. هذه الحيوانات البحرية اللطيفة تأكل أعشاب البحر. وهى فى خطر بسبب التلوث وشباك الصيد.

لمساعدة هذه الحيوانات، نحتاج إلى :

- حماية أماكن معيشتها.
- إيقاف التلوث.
- إنشاء مناطق آمنة
- مساعدة الناس أن تعرف عن هذه الحيوانات

إذا لم نتصرف الآن، فربما تختفى هذه الحيوانات المذهلة إلى الأبد.

Scanned with CamScanner

III Writing Skill

Writing a research report about an endangered animal

- To write a research report about an endangered animal,

لكتابة تقرير بحثي عن حيوان معرض للخطر.

- choose an animal — اختر اسم الحيوان
- research facts about it — ابحث عن حقائق عن هذا الحيوان

A good report has التقرير الجيد يحتوى على

1. **Clear title** عنوان واضح
   "Endangered Animals"
2. **Introduction** مقدمة
   "Many animals are in danger of disappearing."
3. **Facts and information** حقائق ومعلومات
   "The Red Sea Dugong eats sea grass."
4. **Examples** أمثلة
   "The Red Sea Dugong is an endangered animal."
5. **Solutions** حلول
   "To help these animals, stop pollution."
6. **Conclusion** خاتمة
   "If we don't act now, these amazing animals could disappear forever."

Pop Quiz on Writing Skill

05 min

للمزيد من إتقان المهارات اللغوية كراسة المعاصر للمهارات اللغوية في نهاية الكتاب

- **Write a research report about an endangered animal of FOUR (4) sentences**

Guiding elements :

- **Introduction** • How does it look ?
- **Paragraph 1** • Why is it endangered ?
- **Paragraph 2** • How can we help it ?
- **Conclusion** • What will happen if we don't save it ?

.....
.....
.....
.....

Scanned with CamScanner

General Exercises On Lessons 4 & 5

نصوص الاستماع والتقييمات في نهاية الكتاب

EL-MOASSER Exercises تدريبات المعاصر

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False. استمع إلى معلمك و اكتب (T) صح او (F) خطأ.

1. Many animals are in danger of disappearing forever. [ ]
2. The lion is one of the most endangered animals in Egypt. [ ]
3. Less than 200 of these cats remain in the wild. [ ]
4. Animals are in danger because people build houses in their habitats. [ ]

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. People work hard to create safe places for ..... animals.
   a. deep b. endangered c. dead d. danger
2. The ..... is a gentle sea animal.
   a. bear b. dugong c. zebra d. tiger
3. After lunch, little food ..... in the dishes.
   a. remains b. disappears c. builds d. grows
4. She is ..... than her brother.
   a. fast b. faster c. fastest d. fast as
5. The red dress is longer ..... the blue one.
   a. than b. then c. that d. the
6. My cousin is ..... than my brother.
   a. youngest b. younger c. young d. the youngest

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

stop – animals – pollution – grass – protect

The Red Sea Dugong is an endangered animal in Egypt. These gentle sea animals eat sea (1) ..... . They are in danger because of (2) ..... and fishing nets. To help these (3) ..... , we need to protect their homes and (4) ..... pollution.

4 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below.

The Red Sea Dugong

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Guiding words :

- sea grass
- in danger
- pollution

.....

UNIT 3

Scanned with CamScanner

General Exercises On Lessons 4 & 5

نصوص الاستماع والتقييمات في نهاية الكتاب

SB, AB & Previous Exams

تدريبات كتاب الطالب والتقييمات والاختبارات السابقة

1 AB Read the text and answer the questions.

Many animals around the world are endangered. This means they are in danger of disappearing forever. Some animals are in danger because of cutting down trees, pollution and hunting animals. Examples of endangered animals are the Arabian Leopard, the Red Sea Dugong and giant panda. We can protect endangered animals by protecting their homes, planting trees, keeping environment clean and not hunting animals .

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. Some animals are in danger because of ..... .
   a. planting trees b. cutting down trees
   c. hunting animals d. b&c together
2. ..... is an example of endangered animals.
   a. Dog b. Cat c. Giant panda d. Rabbit

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Where are many animals endangered? .....
4. How can we protect endangered animals? .....
5. Write a suitable title for the passage. .....

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. Today is ..... [hot] than yesterday. (قنا - دشنا ٢٠٢٦)
2. SB Bears are ..... [big] than dogs.
3. Amany is ..... [smart] than her sister. (سوهاج - طما ٢٠٢٦)
4. AB Arabic is ..... [easy] than French.

Rewind

نشط ذاكرتك وأكمل الرحلة

Vocabulary

يلا نرجع بسرعة نفتكر المفردات اللغوية في الوحدات السابقة

taste يتذوق / حاسة التذوق	healthy habits عادات صحية	community park حديقة مجتمعية
smell يشم / حاسة الشم	owner مالك	feed يطعم
hearing حاسة السمع	greedy جشع	culture ثقافة
senses الحواس	volunteer يتطوع	outfit رداء خاص (ملابس)

Scanned with CamScanner

Accumulative Dictation

إملاء تراكمى على الدروس

اختبار لقياس وتقييم مدى استيعاب الطالب للمفردات اللغوية

LESSON 3

mistakes	..... ذبل كنيف
wise	..... كهف
footprints	..... خدعة / يخدع

LESSONS 4&5

species	..... مهدد بالانقراض
the Arabian Leopard	..... حيوانات بحريه
fishing net	..... اطوم البحر الأحمر

LESSONS 3, 4 & 5

تدريب تراكمى على المفردات اللغوية للدروس الثالث والرابع والخامس

1. Complete the following sentences using the words from the box.

Footprints - sea grass - hunt - fox

1. A ..... is a small, quick animal with a fluffy tail and red-brown fur.
2. To ..... is to look for and catch animals for food.
3. Dugongs eat ..... .
4. ..... are marks left by feet.

2. Read and write.

• Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Present		Past
.....	يتظاهر	pretended
stand	يقف	.....
.....	يدخل	entered
notice	يلاحظ	.....

Present		Past
remain	يبقى / يتبقى	.....
.....	يتصرف	acted
build	يبنى	.....
.....	يدرس / يعلم	taught

UNIT 3

Scanned with CamScanner

Skills 1 Reading Comprehension

Demonstrate understanding of specific details

تختبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مدى إتقانك لمهارة القراءة.

التحدى قد تجد صعوبة فى فهم تفاصيل معينة فى النص.

مفتاح الحل يعتمد هذا السؤال على قراءة النص جيدًا حيث تكون الإجابة موجودة فى النص بشكل مباشر.

1 Learn تعلم كيفية الإجابة.

Read and learn how to answer:

Many animals around the world are in danger of disappearing forever. These animals are called endangered species. The Arabian Leopard is one of the most endangered animals in Egypt and the Middle East. Less than 200 of these beautiful cats remain in the wild. One reason is that these animals are in danger because people build houses in their habitats.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. ..... species are animals which are in danger of disappearing forever.

a. Sea b. Zoo c. (Endangered) d. Wild

2. Leopards are beautiful .....

a. dogs b. (cats) c. lizards d. frogs

شرح الحل

نقرأ المعلومات الواردة جيدًا ونستخرج الإجابة مباشرة من النص.

2 Master اتقن طريقة حل السؤال (متبعًا الخطوة الأولى).

Read and answer the questions :

Yesterday, I did some research about my favorite sea animal. It is the Red Sea Dugong. It is an endangered animal in Egypt. This gentle sea animal eats sea grass. It is in danger because of pollution and fishing nets.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

1. The Red Sea Dugong lives in .....

a. China b. England c. Egypt d. Japan

2. The Red Sea Dugong eats .....

a. small insects b. sea grass c. large leaves d. fresh fruit

3. The Red Sea Dugong is in danger because of .....

a. clean water b. pollution c. sea grass d. safe areas

Scanned with CamScanner

2 Review, Practice & Master
for Correction Notes

الهدف من هذا الجزء
- التأكيد على فهم الطالب للقواعد اللغوية.
- اكتساب الطالب مهارة التعامل مع سؤال تصحيح الخطأ.

Review راجع القاعدة وتأكد من فهمك

Comparative adjectives — **صفات المقارنة**

للمقارنة بين اثنين نضيف للصفة القصيرة [er] وبعدها than

[short adjective] + er + than

Ex.: tall ⇒ taller than — big ⇒ bigger than

safe ⇒ safer than — healthy ⇒ healthier than

Practice تدرب على كيفية التعامل مع السؤال

Sentence	Correction	Reason
1 Lions are ..... [strong] than monkeys.	stronger	عند المقارنة بين شيئين يضاف للصفة القصيرة [-er]
2 The bear is ..... [big] than the fox.	bigger	عندما تنتهى الصفة بحرف ساكن وقبله حرف متحرك يضاعف الحرف الاخير في الصفة قبل اضافة [-er] في المقارنة
3 Elephants are .....[heavy] than giraffes.	heavier	عندما تنتهي الصفة بحرف [y] قبله حرف ساكن نحول [y] إلى [i] ونضيف [-er] في المقارنة
4 Cats are safer ..... [then] lions.	than	نضع [than] بعد الصفة للمقارنة

Master أتقن طريقة حل السؤال

Write the reason. معرفة الطالب لسبب الإجابة يؤكد استيعابه للقاعدة المطلوبة.

1 A monkey is .....[small] than an elephant.	smaller	.....
2 Vegetables are ..... [healthy] than junk food.	healthier	.....
3 His house is ..... [big] than mine.	bigger	.....
4 The fox is .....[smart] than other animals.	smarter	.....

Write the correction. اكتب التصحيح.

1 A mouse is ..... [small] than a rabbit.	.....	عند المقارنة بين شيئين يضاف للصفة القصيرة [-er]
2 The green shirt is ..... [nice] than the red shirt.	.....	نستخدم صيغة المقارنة لوجود [than]
3 Noha is ..... [young] than Fatma.	.....	صفة قصيرة يضاف لها [-er] فى المقارنة
4 Cats are nicer ..... [then] dogs.	.....	صيغة مقارنة لوجود صفة قصيرة تنتهى بـ [-er]

Scanned with CamScanner

3 Sentence Building

الهدف من هذا الجزء تعلم كيف تكون وترتب جمل وأسئلة.

١ الجملة الخبرية

1 Subject Detective

مين صاحب الفعل؟

ابحث عن الفاعل

أمثلة من الجمل:

1. Zoo animals
   فاعل الجملة الثانية
2. Forest officers
   فاعل الجملة الخامسة

الفاعل هو الشخص أو الشيء الذي يقوم بالفعل.

1. a long - **The monkey** - tail - has.
2. special - animals - **Zoo** - attention - need.
3. pretended - very - **The lion** - to be - sick.
4. has - fur - **The bear** - thick.
5. officers - animals - **Forest** - protect.

	١ فاعل	٢ فعل	٣ باقي الجملة.
1.		has	
2.	Zoo animals		
3.			
4.	The bear		
5.			

2 Verb Hunter

بيعمل إيه؟

ابحث عن الفعل

أمثلة من الجمل:

1. has
   فعل الجملة الأولى
2. pretended
   فعل الجملة الثالثة

الفعل هو الحركة أو الحدث في الجملة.

٢ الجملة الاستفهامية

3 Helper Team

مين بيساعدنا؟

الأفعال المساعدة

Do

تستخدم مع:

I, you, we, they

الأفعال المساعدة تأتي قبل الفاعل في السؤال.

1. do - see - **What** - visitors - animals?
2. giraffes - **What** - eat - do?
3. they - lions - **Do** - see ?
4. do - animals - **Why** - exercise - need ?

	١ كلمة استفهام	٢ فعل مساعد	٣ فاعل	٤ فعل	٥ باقي السؤال؟
1.	What animals				
2.		do			
3.			they		
4.					

4 The Wh-Team

نسأل ازاى؟

أدوات الاستفهام

- Why [لماذا]: للسؤال عن السبب.
- What [ما/ماذا]: للسؤال عن شيء.

أداة الاستفهام تأتي دائمًا في بداية السؤال.

Scanned with CamScanner

4 Build Your Topic

اكتب موضوعك خطوة بخطوة

1. Word Bank

قم بقراءة المفردات اللغوية وتعلم كيفية استخدامها فى جُمل.

▸ **Use the words in the table to make sentences.**

subject	verb	rest of the sentence
My favorite animal	is	the monkey.
The monkey	has	a long tail.
It	climbs	trees.
Pets	need	daily care.
Rabbits	eat	fresh vegetables.
Dogs	need	exercise.

2. Sentence Machine

قم بترتيب الجُمل التالية لتكون جُمل مناسبة عند كتابة فقرات إنشائية.

▸ **Put the words in the correct order to form sentences.**

1. animal - is - My favorite - the monkey.
2. tail - The monkey - a long - has.
3. trees - climbs - It.
4. care - Pets - daily - need.
5. vegetables - Rabbits - fresh - eat.
6. exercise - Dogs - need.

3. Make your own paragraph

قم بقراءة الجُمل [٦] السابقة ثم تصنيفها على حسب كل فقرة إنشائية مطلوب كتابتها من الفقرات التالية.

Write a paragraph about your favorite animal.

Write a paragraph about pets.

Scanned with CamScanner

5 Important Topics

تعتبر مهارة الكتابة من المهارات الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع لذا يجب استخدام جمل وأفكار مترابطة. قم بقراءة هذه الجمل لتساعدك على التعامل مع مهارة الكتابة (٢١ جملة).

1 Animals at the forest park

Many people like visiting the forest park.[1] The forest guide shows visitors the animals there.[2] Monkeys, lions, and giraffes are amazing animals at the forest park.[3] Monkeys can climb trees.[4] Lions often hunt at night.[5] Giraffes eat leaves from tall trees[6]

2 Helping animals

Animals need our help to stay safe [7] Each animal needs special care[8]. Dogs need exercise.[9] Birds need clean cages [10] Elephants need big spaces to move around.[11] Everyone can help protect animals[12]. When we care for animals, we create a safe environment for them[13].

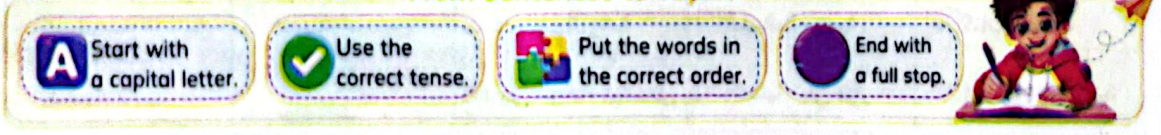
3 Endangered animals

Many animals are in danger of disappearing forever.[14] The Arabian Leopard is one of the most endangered animals in Egypt[15]. People build houses in their habitats.[16] We need to stop pollution and protect their homes[17].

4 Wild animals

Wild animals face different challenges.[18] Their homes are getting smaller because of new cities.[19] Wild animals need clean water and safe places to live.[20] Forest officers work hard to protect these animals[21].

From Sentences to Topics



Scanned with CamScanner

Review through the Exam on Unit 3

مراجعة الوحدة من خلال اختبارات المحافظات وكتاب الطالب والتقييمات

15 Vocabulary

أهم 15 مفردة لغوية وردت فى كتاب الطالب والتقييمات والمحافظات (التى تمكن الطالب من اجتياز أى امتحان).

spotted	منقط	zebra	حمار وحشى	fluffy tail	ذيل كثيف
forest guide	مرشد فى الغابة	hunt	يصطاد	footprints	آثار الأقدام
trunk	خرطوم الفيل	vet	طبيب بيطرى	cave	كهف
bear	دب	forest officer	حارس الغابة	endangered	مهدد بالانقراض
monkey	قرد	pet	حيوان أليف	disappearing	الاختفاء

15 Vocabulary through the Exam

جمل مختارة على المفردات اللغوية من الأسئلة الأكثر شيوعاً فى كتاب الطالب والتقييمات والاختبارات السابقة.
ذاكرها وهتقابلها كثير فى الامتحان.

1. The giraffe has a spotted[1] coat.
2. My dad is a forest guide[2] ; he shows visitors the animals.
3. The elephant uses its trunk[3] to spray water on its body.
4. The bear[4] has thick fur and sharp claws.
5. Monkeys[5] are very good at climbing trees.
6. The zebra[6] has a striped coat.
7. Hunt[7] means to look for and catch animals for food.
8. Vets[8] check animals' health to keep them healthy.
9. Forest officers[9] work hard to protect animals' homes.
10. Pets[10] need daily care from their owners.
11. A fox is a small animal with a fluffy tail[11] and red-brown fur.
12. Footprints[12] are marks left by feet.
13. A cave[13] is a large hole in a mountain.
14. The Red Sea Dugong is an endangered[14] animal.
15. Some animals are in danger of disappearing[15] forever.

[1] كتاب التقييمات	[2] كتاب التقييمات	[3] القاهرة - البساتين	[4] القاهرة - شبرا	[5] الإسكندرية - الجمرك
[6] كفر الشيخ - دسوق	[7] الغربية - بسيون	[8] دمياط - الروضة	[9] الشرقية - ههيا	[10] كتاب الطالب
[11] كتاب الطالب	[12] بورسعيد - شمال بورسعيد	[13] بنى سويف - الواسطى	[14] المنيا - بنى مزار	[15] الجيزة - العمرانية

Scanned with CamScanner

Language

القواعد اللغوية الهامة التى وردت فى كتاب الطالب والتقييمات والمحافظات
(التى تمكن الطالب من اجتياز أى امتحان)

Comparative Adjectives : صفات المقارنة :

..... + short adj. صفة قصيرة + er + than .....

تتحول الصفات القصيرة إلى صيغة المقارنة بإضافة (-er) إليها، وتأتى بعدها (than) :

- fast → faster than
- clean → cleaner than

Language through the Exam

جمل مختارة على القواعد اللغوية من الأسئلة الأكثر شيوعاً فى كتاب الطالب والتقييمات والاختبارات السابقة.
ذاكرها وهتقابلها كثير فى الامتحان.

1. Eating vegetables is healthier than eating junk food.
2. The plane is faster than the train.
3. Winter is colder than summer.
4. Asser is taller than his brother.
5. Flowers are prettier than grass.

(كتاب الطالب / كتاب التقييمات / القاهرة - الزيتون / بورسعيد - بورفؤاد / دمياط - الروضة)

Reading & Writing through the Exam

الموضوعات الأكثر شيوعًا فى كتاب الطالب والتقييمات والاختبارات السابقة.
ذاكرها وهتقابلها كثير فى الامتحان.

1. Read and write.

Animals at the forest park	Vocabulary
There are many animals at the forest park. The elephant is big and gray. The monkey has a long tail. The zebra has a striped coat. The giraffe eats leaves from tall trees. All animals are amazing.	استخرج المعنى من النص واكتبه :
	..... أوراق الشجر
	..... زرافة
	..... مخطط
	..... ذيل
	..... فيل

2. Reorder and write.

1. striped - a - The zebra - coat - has.
.....
2. has - a long - The monkey - tail.
.....
3. is - and - big - The elephant - gray.
.....

3. Write about

- Animals at the forest park

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

Scanned with CamScanner

Sample Test 5

On Unit 3

نصوص الاستماع والتقييمات في نهاية الكتاب

اختبار المعاصر

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False. استمع إلى معلمك واكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ.

1. Animals need our money to stay healthy and safe. [ ]
2. Some animals live in the nests. [ ]
3. Each animal needs special care to live well. [ ]
4. Zoo animals need special attention, too. [ ]

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Teachers give some ..... to students to study well.
   a. habits b. spaces c. advice d. visits
2. I take my cat to the ..... to check its health.
   a. engineer b. vet c. teacher d. farmer
3. Elephants are ..... than lions.
   a. big b. the big c. biggest d. bigger
4. No one in the class is ..... than Hatem.
   a. smarter b. smart c. as smart d. smartest
5. My bag is heavier ..... my sister's bag.
   a. that b. then c. than d. the
6. The lion stays in a strong ..... at the zoo for safety.
   a. river b. cage c. nest d. chair

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

kindness – animals – care – happier – go

Everyone can help protect animals in simple ways. Small acts of (1) ..... make our world better. When we (2) ..... for animals, we create a safe place for them. Being kind to (3) ..... teaches us to be better people. Together, we can make their lives (4) ..... and healthier.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Animals need our help to stay healthy and safe. Some animals live in the wild, while others live in zoos or homes. Zoo animals, like elephants and lions, need space, food, and vet checks. Wild animals face challenges, like their homes getting smaller. **They** also need clean water and safe places to live in. Pets, like dogs and rabbits, need daily care, exercise, and fresh food. Birds need clean cages, and all pets need vet visits. We can help by being kind and caring for animals.

Scanned with CamScanner

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Animals need our help to stay ..... and safe.

a. sad b. hungry c. healthy d. angry

2. The underlined pronoun "They" refers to " ..... ".

a. zoo animals b. wild animals c. pets d. homes

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What do pets need?

.....

4. Summarize the text in one sentence.

.....

5. Where do animals live ?

.....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. The factory is ..... [big] than the museum.
2. Adam is ..... [strong] than his little brother.
3. His house is bigger ..... [the] mine.
4. Flowers are ..... [pretty] than grass.

6 Punctuate the following.

1. the weather today is colder than yesterday

.....

2. how did the fox know it was in danger

.....

7 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below.

Forest animals مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Guiding words :

• big • lion • strong

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Scanned with CamScanner

Sample Test 6 On Unit 3

نصوص الاستماع والتقييمات في نهاية الكتاب

اختبار مجمع من كتاب الطالب والتقييمات والاختبارات السابقة

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False. استمع إلى معلمك و اكتب (T) صح او (F) خطأ.

1. Pets need daily care from their owners. [ ]
2. Dogs need exercise. [ ]
3. Rabbits eat fresh meat. [ ]
4. Cats need cleaner cages than other animals. [ ]

(الجيزة - الهرم ٢٠٢٦)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. AB Rabbits eat fresh ..... .
   a. fruits b. insects c. birds d. vegetables
2. I take my dog to the ..... to check its health. (القاهرة - الزيتون ٢٠٢٦)
   a. vet b. nurse c. farmer d. teacher
3. AB Giraffes eat green ..... .
   a. fish b. leaves c. meat d. paper
4. The dogs are ..... than the cats. (البحيرة - الدلنجات ٢٠٢٦)
   a. fit b. fitter c. as fit d. fittest
5. The bear is ..... than the fox. (المنوفية - الشهداء ٢٠٢٦)
   a. biggest b. bigger c. the big d. big
6. My room is ..... than your room. (القليوبية - طوخ ٢٠٢٦)
   a. clean b. as clean c. cleanest d. cleaner

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

monkeys – climb – trunks – tails – hunt

Yesterday, I went to the forest park with my family. We saw elephants drinking water. They use their (1) ..... to spray water on their body. We also saw (2) ..... . Monkeys are small and have long (3) ..... They (4) ..... trees. It was amazing to see all those animals up close.

(الشرقية - ابو كبير ٢٠٢٦)

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

I'm Soha. My family and I visited the zoo yesterday. We saw a lot of animals. We liked the giraffes the most. They have long necks to eat leaves from tall trees. I didn't like the lions because they were scary. We saw a big elephant. The elephant used its trunk to spray water on its body. My brother Khaled enjoyed watching the monkeys as they climbed the trees. We had a great time there.

Scanned with CamScanner

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Soha didn't like the ..... .

a. giraffes b. lions c. monkeys d. elephants

2. The elephant used its ..... to spray water on its body.

a. trunk b. tail c. leg d. claw

B. Answer the following questions.

3. When did Soha visit the zoo ?

.....

4. Who enjoyed watching the monkeys ?

.....

5. Summarize the text in one sentence.

.....

[السويس - الجناين ٢٠٢٦]

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. AB Sama is ..... **[lazy]** than Hana. [الغربية - سمنود ٢٠٢٦]
2. Oceans are larger ..... **[then]** seas. [البحيرة - كوم حماده ٢٠٢٦]
3. SB The music is ..... **[loud]** than the conversation.
4. Rami is taller ..... **[then]** Marwan. [القليوبية - الخانكة ٢٠٢٦]

6 Punctuate the following.

1. SB what do giraffes eat

.....

2. AB i am a student in grade four

.....

7 AB Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below.

Your favorite animal مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Guiding words :

• monkey • climbs trees • animal

.....

.....

.....

.....

Scanned with CamScanner

Sample Test 1 for Al-Azhar students On Unit 3

اختبار لطلاب الأزهر الشريف

1 Listen and choose the correct answer.

1. Wild animals face different ..... .
   a. officers b. farmers c. challenges d. meals
2. Wild animals need clean ..... .
   a. cups b. water c. clothes d. toys
3. ..... work hard to protect these animals.
   a. Forest officers b. Firefighters
   c. Doctors d. Tour guides

2 Read and complete the dialog.

visitors – work – guide – forest

Nada : What is your father's job ?

Amany : My father is a forest [1] ..... .

Nada : Where does he [2] ..... ?

Amany : He works at the [3] ..... park.

Nada : What does he do ?

Amany : He shows [4] ..... the animals.

3 Choose the correct answer.

1. ..... need taller trees to reach their food.
   a. Giraffes b. Lions c. Dogs d. Bears
2. The ..... eats the sea grass.
   a. monkey b. tiger c. dugong d. lion
3. Lions are ..... than cats.
   a. as strong b. strongest c. stronger d. strong
4. The plane is ..... than the train.
   a. the fastest b. fastest c. faster d. fast

4 Read and correct the underlined mistakes.

1. Noha is **short** than Amira. [.....]
2. Rabbits are faster **then** turtles. [.....]
3. A monkey is **small** than an elephant. [.....]
4. My father is **old** than my mother. [.....]

5 Read the following passage, then answer the questions.

Animals need care to live well. Some animals live in zoos, others live in the wild or at home. Each one needs special care. Zoo animals need clean places and enough food. Wild animals need safe forests and clean water. Pets like dogs and cats need love and care from their owners. Vets check animals' health to keep them **safe**.

A. Read and write [T] True or [F] False.

1. Animals need care to live well. [ ]
2. Zoo animals need clean clothes and enough food. [ ]

B. Choose the correct answer.

3. The text is about "....." .
   a. Animals b. Jobs c. Foods d. Places
4. The underlined word "**safe**" is the opposite of ..... .
   a. clean b. kind c. fresh d. dangerous
5. ..... need love and care from their owners.
   a. Zoo animals b. Wild animals
   c. Pets d. Vets

6 Write a short email of FOUR [4] sentences about elephants. Your name is Faten and your email address is faten@yahoo.com. Your friend's email address is lina@gmail.com.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

• trunk • spray • ears • gray

نصوص الاستماع والنشيدات فى نهاية الكتاب

Scanned with CamScanner

Sample Test 2 for Al-Azhar students On Unit 3

اختبار لطلاب الأزهر الشريف

لصوص الاستماع والتسجيلات في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer.

1. The Red Sea ..... is one of the most endangered animals in Egypt.
   a. Leopard b. Dugong c. Whale d. Dolphin
2. These gentle sea animals eat ..... .
   a. sea grass b. leaves c. fish d. meat
3. They are in danger because of ..... and fishing nets.
   a. climate change b. fires c. floods d. pollution

2 Read and complete the dialog.

see - forest - leaves - monkeys

Youssef : Where did you go last Friday, Maged?
Maged : I went to the [1] ..... park.
Youssef : What did you [2] ..... there?
Maged : I saw giraffes and [3] ..... .
Youssef : What do giraffes eat?
Maged : Giraffes eat [4] ..... from tall trees.

3 Choose the correct answer.

1. A ..... is a large hole in a mountain where animals can live.
   a. cage b. cave c. floor d. building
2. Bears have thick ..... .
   a. fur b. trunk c. wings d. neck
3. The elephant is ..... than the lion.
   a. heavy as b. the heavy c. heavy d. heavier
4. My new T-shirt is nicer ..... the old one.
   a. that b. than c. this d. then

4 Read and correct the underlined mistakes.

1. The blue kite is higher **then** the red kite. [.....]
2. Winter is **cold** than spring. [.....]
3. The village is **calm** than the city. [.....]
4. Science is **easiest** than math for me. [.....]

5 Read the following passage, then answer the questions.

There was an old lion. He was weak and couldn't hunt. He tricked animals and pretended to be sick in his cave. He called the animals and asked them to visit him before he died. Many animals entered and never returned. A wise fox noticed the one-way footprints. He didn't go into the cave. He learned from the mistakes of others.

A. Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1. The lion couldn't hunt. [ ]
2. The fox was wise. [ ]

B. Choose the correct answer.

3. The lion tricked animals and pretended to be ..... .
   a. scared b. strong c. sick d. happy
4. Many ..... entered the cave and never returned.
   a. animals b. people c. spaces d. vets
5. The fox learned from the ..... of others.
   a. mistakes b. tradition c. crafts d. habits

6 Write a short paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences on.

"Giraffes"

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

• forest park • neck • leaves • spotted

.....

Scanned with CamScanner

Review

on Units 1,2&3

I Vocabulary

Unit 1

senses	الحواس	smoke	دخان	restaurant	مطعم
hearing	حاسة السمع	mind	عقل	get dressed	يرتدي ملابسه
sight	حاسه الإبصار	sharp	يقظ / منتبه	setting	زمان ومكان القصه
smell	حاسه الشم	break time	وقت الاستراحة	greedy	طماع / جشع
fire	حريق	owner	مالك	jingling	صوت رنين خفيف

Unit 2

community	مجتمع	traffic	حركة مرور	outfit	رداء خاص [ملابس]
neighbors	جيران	bin	سلة مهملات	neighborhood	حى
trash	قمامة	culture	ثقافه	wooden	خشبي
collect	يجمع	the Delta	دلتا النيل	train station	محطة قطار
feed	يطعم	Upper Egypt	الوجه القبلى	air pollution	تلوث الهواء
volunteer	يتطوع	region	منطقة / إقليم	safely	بأمان

Unit 3

giraffe	زرافة	cave	كهف	footprints	آثار أقدام
zebra	حمار وحشى	vet	طبيب بيطرى	fluffy	كثيف
leaves	أوراق شجر	hunt	يصطاد	species	فصائل / انواع
striped	مخطط	pretend	يتظاهر	sea grass	عشب بحري
spotted	منقط	places	اماكن	fishing nets	شباك الصيد
thick	سميك / كثيف	trunk	خرطوم [الفيل]	protect	يحمي
forest officer	حارس الغابة	sick	مريض	endangered	مهدد بالانقراض

Scanned with CamScanner

II Language in use

• Unit 1

The Present Simple Tense: زمن المضارع البسيط :

Affirmative statement الجملة الخبرية المثبتة

I/They/We/You / اسم جمع + التصريف الأول للفعل

He / She / It / اسم مفرد + التصريف الأول للفعل + [s/es/ies]

ex. - My brother and I watch TV in the evening.

- The nurse helps sick people.

• Unit 2

The Present Simple Tense in the negative and interrogative:

زمن المضارع البسيط فى صيغة النفى وصيغة الاستفهام :

Negative statement الجملة الخبرية المنفية

Subject + don't/doesn't + inf. .....

ex. - Cars don't move quickly in the morning.

- He doesn't need to use a car every day.

Interrogative صيغة الاستفهام

Do/Does + فاعل + inf. مصدر الفعل .... ?

ex. - Does Mariam listen to music on the bus? - No, she doesn't

- Do you take the bus to the Pyramids? - Yes, I do.

• Unit 3

Comparative Adjectives: صفات المقارنة :

▸ short adj. + er + than

ex. The horse is bigger than the cat.

◂ ملاحظات هامة :

❶ يضاف [-r] للصفة ذات مقطع واحد المنتهية بـ [- e] عند المقارنة بين اثنين مثل:

ex. nice → nice r

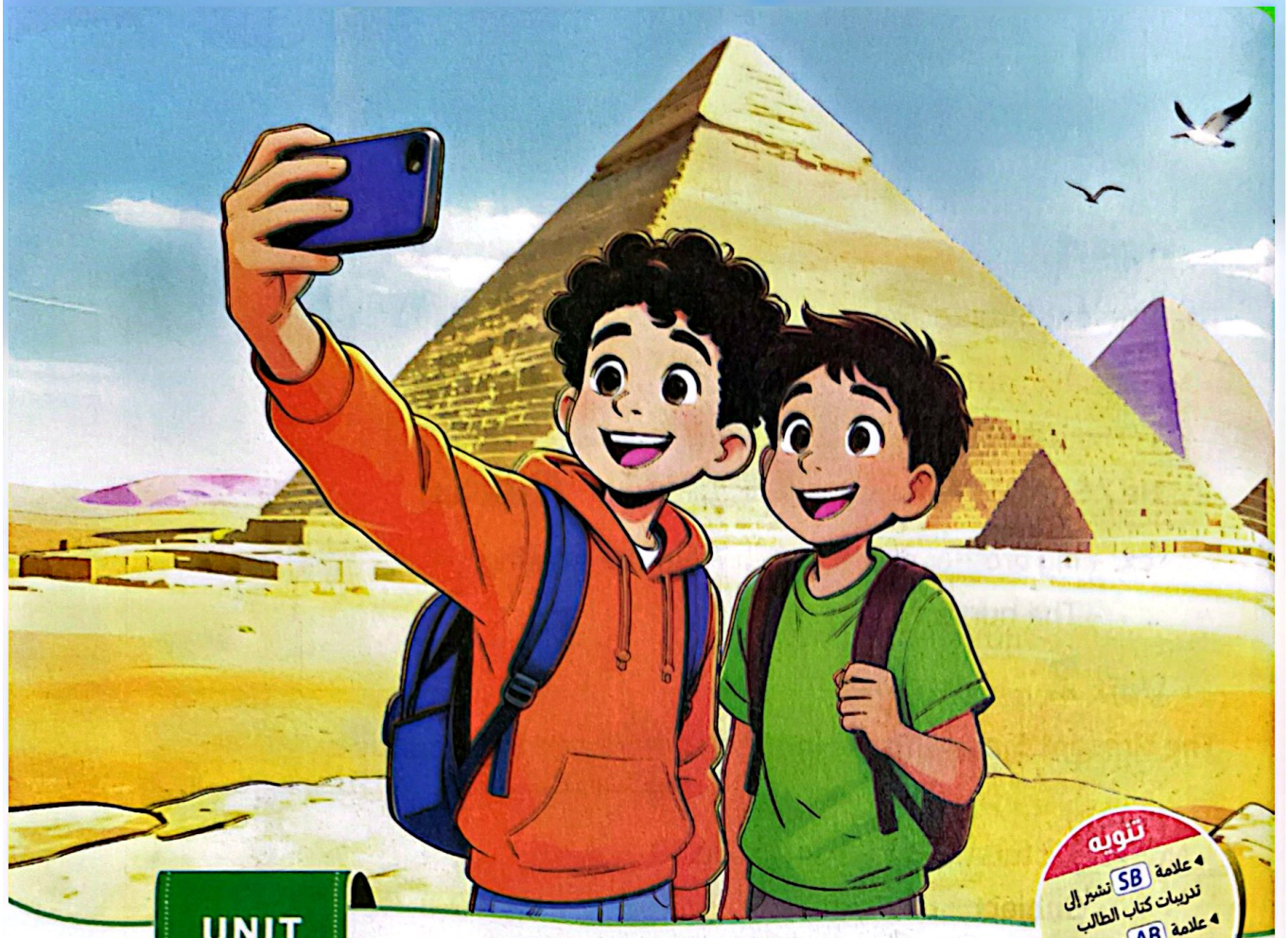
❷ يضاعف الحرف الأخير قبل إضافة [-er] في الصفات ذات مقطع واحد المنتهية بحرف ساكن وقبلها حرف متحرك مثل:

ex. big → big ger

❸ تحول الـ [ي -] إلى [ا -] ونضيف [- er] في الصفات ذات مقطع واحد منتهية بـ [ي -] قبلها حرف ساكن مثل:

ex. healthy → health ier

Scanned with CamScanner



تنويه
- علامة SB تشير إلى تدريبات كتاب الطالب
- علامة AB تشير إلى تدريبات كتاب التقييمات

UNIT 4 Egypt My Homeland

مصـر موطنـى

Learning Outcomes

Listening
- Identify key information about a tourist attraction in a conversation
- Discriminate between the pronunciation of the /p/ and /b/ sounds

- يتعرف على معلومات أساسية عن أماكن الجذب السياحى فى محادثة
- يميز بين نطق الأصوات /p/ و /b/

Reading
- Recognize descriptions of famous places
- Extract key information from travel leaflets
- Read numbers up to a billion

- يتعرف على وصف أماكن مشهورة
- يستخلص معلومات رئيسية من كتيبات سياحية
- يقرأ الأرقام حتى المليار

Speaking
- Discuss in groups famous places in Egypt
- Use prepositions of places to talk about different locations

- يناقش أماكن مشهورة فى مصر فى مجموعات
- يستخدم حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان للتحدث عن أماكن مختلفة

Writing
- Design a basic travel leaflet
- Complete sentences using prepositions of place
- Write a blog post about a famous place in Egypt
- Use prepositions of place to complete sentences

- يصمم كتيب سياحى بسيط
- يكمل الجمل باستخدام حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان
- يكتب منشور في مدونة عن مكان مشهور فى مصر
- يستخدم حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان لتكملة جمل

Scanned with CamScanner

LESSON 1

Places in Egypt

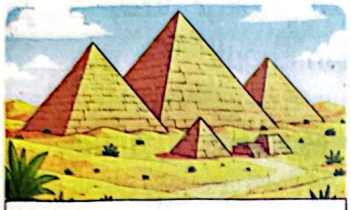
I Vocabulary

قاموس المعاصر الناطق

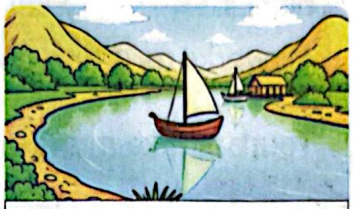
Key vocabulary

المفردات اللغوية الأساسية موضع الامتحان [كما وردت فى كتاب الطالب]

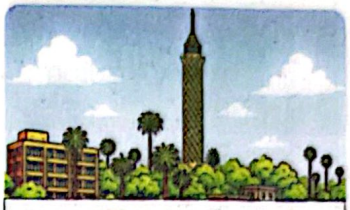
Places in Egypt أماكن فى مصر



Pyramids الاهرامات

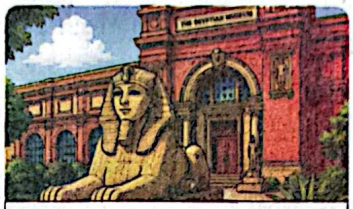


Nile River نهر النيل



Cairo Tower برج القاهرة

Siwa Oasis
واحة سيوة



Egyptian Museum
المتحف المصرى

Khan Al-Khalili Bazaar
سوق خان الخليلي

tour guide مرشد سياحى	treasures كنوز	gifts هدايا

Extra vocabulary

المفردات اللغوية المساعدة فى التعامل مع الورقة الامتحانية

stones الأحجار	country دوله / بلد	tourists سياح
busy market سوق مزدحم	near بالقرب من	first time أول مرة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular		Irregular	
Present	Past	Present	Past
visit يزور	visited	ride يركب	rode
explore يستكشف	explored	buy يشترى	bought

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

take pictures	يلتقط صور	Welcome to Egypt!	مرحبًا بك فى مصر!
That sounds fun!	يبدو هذا أمر ممتع!	from the top	من الاعلى
work as + وظيفة.....	يعمل كـ	Nice to meet you!	سعدت بلقائك!

Scanned with CamScanner

• Study these definitions ادرس تلك التعريفات

Word الكلمة	Definition التعريف
AB oasis	is a place with water and trees in the desert مكان توجد فيه مياه وأشجار فى قلب الصحراء

Main points on Listening and Reading texts نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة.

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Amazing places in Egypt	talk - places	Ali and John are talking about Egypt's amazing places. على وجون يتحدثان عن الأماكن المذهلة في مصر.
	work - guide	Ali works as a tour guide in Egypt. يعمل على كمرشد سياحى في مصر.
	pictures -Pyramids	Tourists take many pictures at the Pyramids. يلتقط السياح العديد من الصور عند الإهرامات.
	ride camels	Many people ride camels near the Pyramids. يركب الكثير من الناس الجمال بالقرب من الإهرامات.
	museum - treasures	The Egyptian Museum has many treasures to see. يضم المتحف المصرى العديد من الكنوز التى تستحق المشاهدة.

05 min Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات المعاصر

1. Tourists go to the ..... to buy gifts.
   a. office b. bazaar c. tower d. theater
2. The ..... explains the history to the tourists.
   a. vet b. forest officer c. tour guide d. dentist
3. Can we ..... a camel near the Pyramids ?
   a. dive b. skate c. drive d. ride
4. I had a ..... for my birthday.
   a. guide b. museum c. gift d. tourist

SB, AB & Previous Exams تدريبات كتاب الطالب والتقييمات والاختبارات السابقة

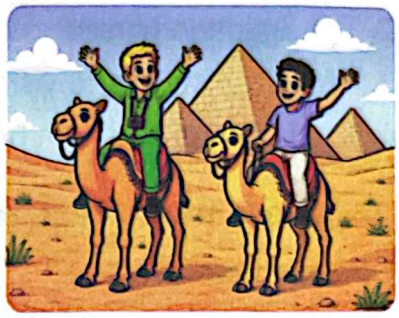
5. AB I want to ..... the Egyptian Museum.
   [التقييمات الشهرية - نوفمبر - المنيا - ملوى ٢٠٢٦]
   a. ride b. visit c. walk d. build
6. AB A/An ..... is a place with water and trees in the desert.
   a. tower b. bazaar c. museum d. oasis
7. SB Khan Al-Khalili Bazaar is a busy ..... .
   a. office b. market c. school d. forest

Scanned with CamScanner

II Listening and Reading

• **Listen and read.** استمع واقرأ.

Exploring Egypt with Ali !



Ali and John are at the Pyramids talking about Egypt's amazing places.

علي و جون في الإهرامات يتحدثون عن الأماكن الرائعة في مصر.

Ali : Hi, I'm Ali ! I work as a tour guide in Egypt. Welcome to Egypt!

مرحبا، أنا علي! أنا أعمل كمرشد سياحي في مصر. مرحبًا بك في مصر!

John : Nice to meet you, Ali ! I'm John. This is my first time in Egypt.

سعدت بلقائك يا علي! انا جون. هذه الزيارة الاولى لي في مصر.

Ali : You will like it here! The Pyramids are very nice. Tourists take many pictures here.

ستستمتع بزيارتك لمصر! فالاهرامات رائعه للغاية. يلتقط السياح صوراً كثيرة هنا.

John : Great! Can I ride a camel, too? رائع! هل يمكنني ايضا ركوب جمل؟

Ali : Yes! Many people ride camels near the Pyramids. It's fun!

نعم! فالكثير من الناس يركبون الجمال بالقرب من الأهرامات. هذا أمر ممتع!

John : What can we visit after the Pyramids? ماذا يمكننا أن نزور بعد الأهرامات؟

Ali : Next, we can visit the Egyptian Museum. It has many treasures to see, and history too!

بعد زيارة الاهرامات، يمكننا زيارة المتحف المصري. فيوجد به الكثير من الكنوز التي يمكننا رؤيتها والتاريخ أيضًا!

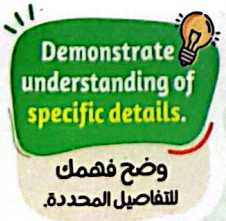
John : I love history! Are there more places to visit?

احب التاريخ ! هل توجد اماكن اكثر نستطيع زيارتها؟

Ali : Yes! We can go to Khan Al-Khalili to buy some gifts.

بالطبع ! فيمكننا زيارة خان الخليلي لشراء بعض الهدايا.

John : That sounds fun! يبدو هذا أمر ممتع!



Learn 1. Ali is a ..... in Egypt.
a. tourist b. tour guide c. vet d. driver

Practice 2. The Egyptian Museum has many .....
a. treasures b. gifts c. camels d. pets

Scanned with CamScanner

EL-MOASSER Exercises تدريبات المعاصر

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False. استمع إلى معلمك و اكتب (T) صح او (F) خطأ

1. Egypt has a lot of interesting places. [ ]
2. The Egyptian Museum is an amazing place. [ ]
3. Many tourists like to visit the Egyptian Museum. [ ]
4. The Egyptian Museum has many machines to see. [ ]

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. People used giant ..... to build the Pyramids.
   a. towers b. stones c. oases d. trees
2. Tourists can ride ..... at the Pyramids.
   a. gifts b. history c. boats d. camels
3. The Egyptian Museum is full of .....
   a. drinks b. camels c. gifts d. history
4. Tourists ..... many pictures at Cairo Tower.
   a. takes b. to take c. take d. taking
5. Yara ..... wake up early.
   a. isn't b. don't c. doesn't d. wasn't
6. Ali works ..... a tour guide in Aswan.
   a. at b. as c. in d. on

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

treasures - ride - tourists - top - pictures

There are a lot of amazing places in Egypt. So many (1) ..... like visiting Egypt every year. Tourists enjoy visiting the Pyramids. They take many (2) ..... there. They (3) ..... camels near the Pyramids. They also like visiting the Egyptian Museum. The Egyptian Museum has many (4) ..... to see.

4 Punctuate the following.

1. This is my first time in egypt

   .....

2. which places do you like to visit

   .....

Scanned with CamScanner

SB, AB & Previous Exams

تدريبات كتاب الطالب والتقييمات والاختبارات السابقة

1 AB Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

pictures - guide - Pyramids - food - camel

Ali is a tour (1) ..... in Egypt. He takes tourists to see the (2) ..... . They stop to take (3) ..... with their cameras. Many visitors want to ride a (4) ..... near the Pyramids.

(الدقهلية - ميت غمر ٢٠٢٦)

2 AB Read the text and answer the questions.

Sami went to the Cairo Tower on Friday. He went with his brother. They saw the whole city from the top. It is a very tall and famous place. There were many tourists and visitors. They took many pictures. They ate lunch at a very nice restaurant. They had a great time together.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Sami went to the Cairo ..... on Friday.
   a. Tower b. Museum c. River d. Hospital
2. They saw the whole ..... from the top.
   a. desert b. bazaar c. city d. building

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Who did Sami go with ? .....
4. What did they do at the top of the tower ? .....
5. Summarize the text in one sentence. .....

(البحيرة - حوش عيسى ٢٠٢٦)

3 AB Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below.

A place you like to visit with your friends

Guiding words : مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

- the Pyramids
- famous
- camels

.....

.....

.....

Scanned with CamScanner

LESSON 2

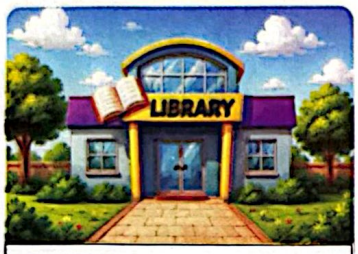
My city

I Vocabulary

قاموس المعاصر الناطق

Key vocabulary

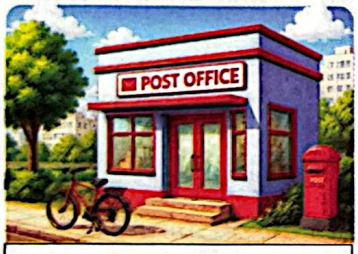
المفردات اللغوية الأساسية موضع الامتحان [كما وردت فى كتاب الطالب]



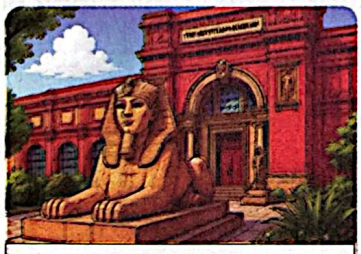
library مكتبة

school مدرسة

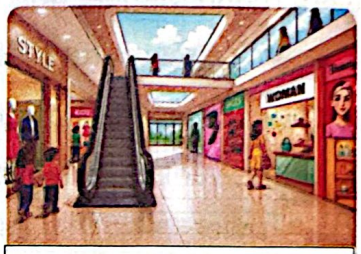
hospital مستشفى



post office
مكتب البريد



museum
متحف



shopping mall
مركز تجاري

packages	طرود بريدية	stores	متاجر	students	طلاب

Extra vocabulary

المفردات اللغوية المساعدة فى التعامل مع الورقة الامتحانية

city	مدينة (كبيرة)	doctors	أطباء	teacher	معلم / معلمة
restaurant	مطعم	nurse	ممرضة	letters	خطابات

• Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular			Irregular		
Present		Past	Present		Past
borrow	يستعير	borrowed	read	يقرأ	read
enjoy	يستمتع بـ	enjoyed	send	يرسل	sent
			teach	يعلم	taught

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

feel better يتحسن | stay connected يبقي على اتصال

Scanned with CamScanner

Main points on Listening and Reading texts

نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة.

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
The places we go in our city	city – places	Our city has many important places. يوجد العديد من الأماكن الهامة فى مدينتنا.
	school – learn	Students go to school to learn and meet friends. يذهب الطلاب إلى المدرسة للتعلم ومقابلة الأصدقاء.
	library – read	The library has many books to read or borrow. داخل المكتبة يوجد العديد من الكتب للقراءة والاستعارة.
	doctors – better	Doctors and nurses help sick people feel better. يساعد الأطباء والممرضات المرضى على الشعور بالتحسن.
	post office	People send letters and packages in the post office. يرسل الناس الخطابات والطرود فى مكتب البريد.
	buy – shopping mall	People buy things and eat in the shopping mall. يشترى الناس أشياء ويتناولوا الطعام داخل مركز التسوق.

Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

▶ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات المعاصر

1. If someone is sick, they go to the .....
   a. school b. museum c. hospital d. mall
2. At the ....., we send letters to our family.
   a. post office b. library
   c. shopping mall d. hospital
3. The shopping mall is a place with many .....
   a. stories b. stores c. animals d. trees
4. They ate lunch at the new .....
   a. restaurant b. museum c. store d. market
5. ..... have treasures from the past.
   a. Supermarkets b. Hospitals c. Museums d. Schools

SB, AB & Previous Exams تدريبات كتاب الطالب والتقييمات والاختبارات السابقة

6. AB I borrow books from the ..... [التقييمات الشهرية - نوفمبر - المنوفية - قويسنا ٢٠٢٦]
   a. post office b. hospital c. museum d. library
7. AB I go to ..... to learn and meet friends. [الجيزة - بولاق الدكرور ٢٠٢٦]
   a. mall b. school c. museum d. oasis

Scanned with CamScanner

8. We learn about history in the ..... . [كفر الشيخ - دسوق ٢٠٢٦]

a. tower b. park c. river d. museum

9. The ..... is a place where doctors help sick people.

a. museum b. school c. library d. hospital

[التقييمات الشهرية - نوفمبر - المنوفية - الشهداء ٢٠٢٦]

II Listening and Reading

Pop Quiz
05 min
تدرب
على قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

• **Listen and read.** استمع واقرأ.

The Places We Go in Our City
أماكن نذهب إليها فى مدينتنا

Our city has many important places that help people every day. One important place is the school. Students go there to learn and meet friends. Teachers help them, and the library has many books to read or borrow.

Another important place is the hospital. Doctors and nurses help sick people feel better.

Next to the hospital is the post office, where people send letters and packages to stay connected.

The shopping mall has many stores and restaurants. People buy things and eat there. Behind it is a museum with treasures that teach us about our history. These places make our city a great place to live.

يوجد بمدينتنا العديد من الأماكن الهامة التى تساعد الناس كل يوم. المدرسة هي احدى هذه الاماكن الهامة. يذهب الطلاب إلى المدرسة ليتعلموا ويلتقون باصدقائهم . يساعد المعلمون الطلاب وتحتوى المكتبة المدرسية على العديد من الكتب للقراءة والاستعارة.

المستشفى هى مكان آخر مهم فى مدينتنا . يساعد الأطباء والممرضات المرضى على الشعور بالتحسن. بجانب المستشفى يوجد مكتب بريد حيث يقوم الناس بإرسال الخطابات والطرود البريدية الخاصة بهم . لكى يبقوا على تواصل. المركز التجارى فى مدينتنا به العديد من المتاجر و المطاعم. يقوم الناس بشراء الأشياء وتناول الطعام. خلف المركز التجارى، يوجد متحف يحتوى على كنوز تعلمنا عن تاريخنا. كل هذه الأماكن تجعل مدينتنا مكان رائع للمعيشة فيه.

Demonstrate understanding of specific details.
وضح فهمك للتفاصيل المحددة.

Learn 1. People send letters and ..... at the post office.
a. tools b. packages
c. cars d. food

Practice 2. Students can read and borrow books from the ..... .
a. hospital b. library
c. post office d. shopping mall

Scanned with CamScanner

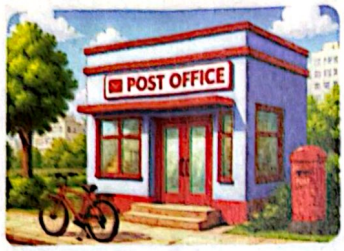
• Read and identify.

اقرأ وتعرف.

1 The library :

is a place where we can read or borrow books.

المكتبة هى المكان الذى نستطيع فيه قراءة أو استعارة الكتب منها.



2 The post office :

is a place where we send letters and packages.

مكتب البريد هو المكان الذى نرسل عبره الخطابات والطرود البريدية.

3 The school :

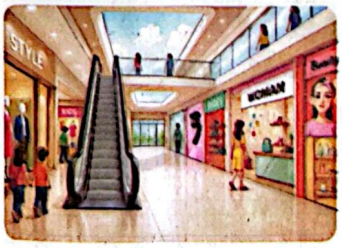
is a place where students learn and meet friends.

المدرسة هى المكان الذى يتعلم فيه الطلاب ويقابلون أصدقائهم.

4 The museum:

is a place where we can see treasures that teach us about our history.

المتحف هو المكان الذى نستطيع فيه رؤية الكنوز التى تعلمنا عن تاريخنا.



5 The shopping mall :

is a place where people buy things and eat there.

مركز التسوق هو المكان الذى يشترى منه الناس الأشياء ويأكلون هناك.

6 The hospital :

is a place where doctors and nurses help sick people feel better.

المستشفى هى المكان الذى يساعد فيه الأطباء والممرضات الأشخاص المرضى فى التحسن.

Scanned with CamScanner

III Language in use

Prepositions of place
حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان

▸ We use prepositions of place to show where things are.
نستخدم حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان لتوضيح اماكن الاشياء.

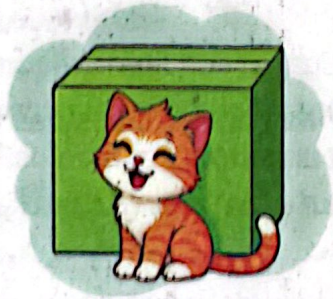
in في

- The cat is in the box.

on على

- The cat is on the box.

in front of أمام



- The cat is in front of the box.

behind خلف

- The cat is behind the box.

next to بجانب

- The cat is next to the box.

between بين

- The cat is between the boxes.

Scanned with CamScanner

Pop Quiz on Language in use

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات المعاصر

1. The toys are ..... front of the box.
   a. on b. in c. to d. at
2. The library is ..... to the museum.
   a. next b. front c. under d. behind
3. The lamp is ..... the laptop and the fan.
   a. next b. between c. under d. in front
4. The key was ..... the door, so I didn't see it.
   a. in b. next c. behind d. front

SB, AB & Previous Exams تدريبات كتاب الطالب والتقييمات والاختبارات السابقة

5. There is a lamp ..... the table.
   a. on b. next c. in front d. between
   [التقييمات الشهرية / نوفمبر - سوهاج - جهينة ٢٠٢٦]
6. The dog is hiding ..... the door.
   a. next b. behind c. between d. in
   [التقييمات الشهرية / نوفمبر - كفر الشيخ - قلين ٢٠٢٦]
7. SB The flowers are ..... two trees.
   a. front b. between c. next d. on
8. AB The picture is ..... the wall.
   a. next b. on c. front d. in
   [التقييمات الشهرية / نوفمبر - المنوفية - الشهداء ٢٠٢٦]

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات المعاصر

1. I couldn't see the dog because it was ..... **[between]** the chair.
2. There's a tree ..... **[on]** front of my house.
3. The bird is ..... **[in]** the branch of the tree.
4. Plants grow next ..... **[of]** the river.

SB, AB & Previous Exams تدريبات كتاب الطالب والتقييمات والاختبارات السابقة

5. SB The bird is ..... **[front]** the cage. [القاهرة - عين شمس ٢٠٢٦]
6. AB I took a photo ..... **[in]** of the Cairo Tower. [البحيرة - حوش عيسى ٢٠٢٦]
7. There is a school ..... **[behind]** to the park.
   [التقييمات الشهرية - نوفمبر / المنوفية - الشهداء ٢٠٢٦]

Scanned with CamScanner

EL-MOASSER Exercises تدريبات المعاصر

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The post office is next ..... the library.
   a. in b. of c. to d. at
2. Doctors and nurses work in the .....
   a. museum b. library c. post office d. hospital
3. People buy things at the .....
   a. museum b. library c. hospital d. shopping mall
4. He is sitting ..... front of the house.
   a. to b. in c. at d. on
5. Students can ..... books from school library.
   a. plant b. visit c. borrow d. sail
6. There are two chairs ..... my bedroom.
   a. on b. in c. under d. next

2 Read the text and answer the questions.

Our city has many important places. These places help people every day. One important place is the school. Students go to school to learn. They also meet friends there. Teachers help students learn <u>new</u> things. There is a library in the school. The library has many books. Students can read books there. You can borrow books from the library.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The opposite of the underlined word "<u>new</u>" is" ..... ".
   a. old b. busy c. important d. dangerous
2. There is a ..... in the school.
   a. museum b. library c. park d. theater

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Summarize the text in one sentence .
   .....
4. Where can you borrow books?
   .....
5. Who help students learn new things?
   .....

Scanned with CamScanner

SB, AB & Previous Exams

تدريبات كتاب الطالب والتقييمات والاختبارات السابقة

1 SB Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

shopping mall - borrow - sick - school - office

There are different places in my town. Young children go to [1] ..... every morning to learn. They can [2] ..... books from the library. When people feel [3] ....., they go to the hospital. People enjoy going to the [4] ..... where many shops sell different things.

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. AB The photo is ..... **[under]** the wall.
2. The dog is standing in front ..... **[off]** the door.
3. The hospital is ..... **[on]** the bank and the museum. [القاهرة - دار السلام ٢٠٢٦]
4. AB My shoes are ..... **[in]** to the bed. [الاسماعيلية - الاسماعيلية ٢٠٢٦]

3 SB Punctuate the following.

1. our city has many important places

.....

2. how do hospitals make people feel better [القليوبية - قليوب ٢٠٢٦]

.....

4 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Places you go in your city

Guiding words : [المنيا - ملوى ٢٠٢٦]

- important
- hospitals
- museum

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Scanned with CamScanner

Accumulative Dictation

إملاء تراكمى على الدروس

اختبار لقياس وتقييم مدى استيعاب الطالب للمفردات اللغوية

LESSON 1

..... هدايا	Cairo Tower .....
..... مرشد سياحى	Siwa Oasis .....
..... المتحف المصرى	bazaar .....

LESSON 2

..... مركز تجارى	museum .....
..... مستشفى	school .....
..... طرود بريدية	letters .....

LESSONS 1&2

تدريب تراكمى على المفردات اللغوية للدروس الأول والثانى

1. Complete the following sentences using the words from the box.

treasures - post office - Tourists - library

1. ..... love visiting the Pyramids.
2. We saw many gold ..... at the Egyptian Museum.
3. The ..... has many books to read or borrow.
4. People send letters and packages in the ..... .

2. Read and write.

• **Conjugation of verbs** تصريف الأفعال

Present		Past
.....	يزور	visited
explore	يستكشف	.....
.....	يركب	rode
buy	يشترى	.....

Present		Past
borrow	يستعير	.....
.....	يستمتع بـ	enjoyed
send	يرسل	.....
.....	يعلم	taught

Scanned with CamScanner

LESSON 3

- The World of Big Numbers
- Pronunciation

I Math

A Billion

Learn

A billion is a thousand million.

المليار هو ألف مليون

1,000,000,000

1 billion

• **Look and identify.** انظر وتعرف

Numbers up to a billion

The place-value chart

مخطط القيمة المكانية

billions		millions			thousands			units		
billions مليارات	hundred millions مئات الملايين	ten millions عشرات الملايين	millions ملايين	hundred thousands مئات الآلاف	ten thousands عشرات الآلاف	thousands آلاف	hundreds مئات	tens عشرات	ones آحاد
1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

Scanned with CamScanner

• **Read and learn.** اقرأ و تعلم.

If we need to Say
8,199,590,341

- **8** eight billion
- **199** one hundred ninety-nine million
- **590** five hundred ninety thousand
- **341** three hundred and forty-one

• **Read and learn.** اقرأ وتعلم.

China has one of the world's largest populations. In 1980, the population of China reached about 1.000.000.000 which means 1 billion people.

تعتبر الصين من أكثر دول العالم تعداداً للسكان. ففى عام ١٩٨٠ وصل عدد سكانها إلى حوالى ١,٠٠٠,٠٠٠,٠٠٠ أى ما يعادل مليار نسمة.

Pop Quiz on Math

1 Read and complete.

billions - hundred millions - hundred thousands - tens - thousands

.....	ten million	.....	.....	.....
1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
.....	million	ten thousand	hundred	one

2 Read and write (T) True or (F) False.

1. 4,000 is four thousand. [ ]
2. 73,000,000 is seventy-three thousand. [ ]
3. 7,000,000,000 is seven hundred billion. [ ]

Scanned with CamScanner

II Pronunciation

قاموس العناصر الناطق

b → /b/

▶ The letter b is voiced.

- حرف b يصاحبه اهتزاز للاحبال الصوتية عند النطق.

To say it:
1. press your lips together.
2. use your voice.

- لنطق حرف b ، ضم شفتيك معًا، ثم اخرج صوتًا عند النطق.

b → /b/

bat خفاش

bear دب

bin سلة

beak منقار

ban يمنع | bond رابطة - علاقة

p → /p/

▶ The letter p is voiceless.

- حرف p هو حرف ينطق بدون اهتزاز للاحبال الصوتية.

To say it:
1. press your lips together.
2. blow out air.

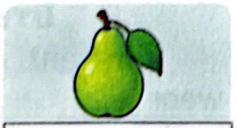
- لنطق حرف p ، ضم شفتيك معًا، ثم اخرج الهواء بقوة.

p → /p/

pond بركة ماء

pan طاسة - مقلاة

peak قمه جبل


pear كمثرى

pin دبوس | pat ضربة خفيفة

Pop Quiz on Pronunciation

05 min

• Listen and write the missing letters.

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1.
- ond

2.
- ear

3.
- in

4.
- eak

Scanned with CamScanner

LESSONS 4&5

- Writing
- Think and Create

I Vocabulary

قاموس المعاصر الناطق

Key vocabulary

المفردات اللغوية الأساسية موضع الامتحان [كما وردت فى كتاب الطالب]

St. Catherine Mountain	جبل سانت كاترين	rocks	صخور	salt lake	البحيرة المالحة
		adventure	مغامرة	nature	الطبيعة
monastery	دير	olive oil	زيت زيتون	warm clothes	ملابس ثقيلة

Extra vocabulary

المفردات اللغوية المساعدة فى التعامل مع الورقة الامتحانية

South Sinai	جنوب سيناء	price	ثمن	local food	طعام محلى
popular	مشهور	natural	طبيعى	colorful	ملون
dates	تمر	palm trees	أشجار النخيل	daytime	النهار

• Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular			Irregular		
Present		Past	Present		Past
climb	يتسلق	climbed	wear	يرتدى	wore
book	يحجز	booked	swim	يسبح	swam

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

at the top فى القمة | along the way على طول الطريق

Main points on Listening and Reading texts

نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة.

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
A visit to St. Catherine Mountain	tourists - mountain	Many tourists visit St. Catherine Mountain in South Sinai. يزور العديد من السياح جبل سانت كاترين فى جنوب سيناء.
	colorful - plants	Along the way, tourists see colorful rocks and small plants. على طول الطريق، يرى السياح صخورًا ملونة ونباتات صغيرة.
	monastery - history	Tourists visit the old monastery and learn about its history. يزور السياح الدير القديم ويتعرفون على تاريخه.

UNIT 4

Scanned with CamScanner

popular – adventure	St. Catherine is a popular place for nature, adventure, and fun with friends and family. سانت كاترين مكان مشهور بالطبيعة والمغامرة وقضاء وقت ممتع مع الأصدقاء والعائلة.

Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

• **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات المعاصر

1. Falafel is a very ..... food in Egypt.
   a. modern b. colorful c. popular d. irregular
2. Tourists like to ..... mountains.
   a. wear b. swim c. book d. climb
3. There are many ..... fish in the sea.
   a. colorful b. rainy c. hot d. high
4. Climbing a mountain is my first .....
   a. letter b. design c. package d. adventure
5. The mountain is made of .....
   a. rocks b. water c. history d. wind

SB, AB & Previous Exams تدريبات كتاب الطالب والتقييمات والاختبارات السابقة

6. AB Tourists can swim and take photos at the Salt .....
   a. Sea b. Lake c. Water d. River

[التقييمات الشهرية - نوفمبر / البحيرة - وادى النطرون ٢٠٢٦]

7. AB Sweet ..... are fresh from palm trees.
   a. apples b. bananas c. dates d. lemons
8. SB Many tourists climb St. Catherine .....
   a. River b. Mountain c. Forest d. Desert

[التقييمات الشهرية - نوفمبر / مرسى مطروح - مطروح ٢٠٢٦]

9. People wear ..... clothes in cold areas. [الجيزة - الدقى ٢٠٢٦]
   a. honest b. fast c. short d. warm
10. ..... is all the animals, plants and rocks in the world. [قنا - نجع حمادى ٢٠٢٦]
   a. Time b. Nature c. Weather d. History

Scanned with CamScanner

II Listening and Reading

Pop Quiz
تدرب
على قطع الفهم
ونصوص الاستماع

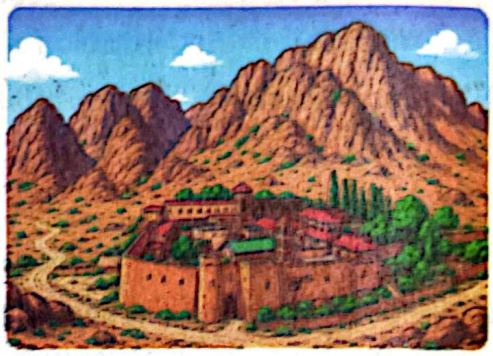
• **Look and read.** انظر واقرأ.

Tarek's blog post about St. Catherine Mountain

A visit to St. Catherine Mountain

By Tarek

March 15, 2024



Many tourists[1] visit St. Catherine Mountain in South Sinai, Egypt. They wake up[2] early to climb, and wear warm clothes because it's cold. Along the way, they see colorful rocks and small plants[3], and some take pictures[4]. At the top, they visit the old monastery and learn about its history. St. Catherine is a popular place for nature, adventure, and fun with friends and family. People can learn about history and enjoy the natural world.

[1] سياح
[2] يستيقظ
[3] نباتات
[4] يلتقط صور

زيارة الى جبل سانت كاترين

بقلم طارق

١٥ مارس ٢٠٢٤

يزور العديد من السياح جبل سانت كاترين فى جنوب سيناء، مصر. يستيقظ السياح مبكرًا للتسلق ويرتدوا ملابس دافئة لأن الجو يكون باردا

على امتداد الطريق، يرى السياح صخورًا ملونة ونباتات صغيرة وبعضهم يلتقطون صورًا.

وعند القمة، يزورون الدير القديم ويتعلمون عن تاريخه. سانت كاترين مكان مشهور للطبيعة والمغامرة والاستمتاع مع الأصدقاء والعائلة. يمكن للناس التعلم عن التاريخ والاستمتاع بالعالم الطبيعى.

Determine the meaning of words.
وضح معانى الكلمات.

Learn 1. The opposite of the underlined word "old" is "……".
a. bad b. new c. heavy d. colorful

Practice 2. The underlined word "popular" means "……".
a. colorful b. hard c. famous d. easy

UNIT 4

Scanned with CamScanner

III Writing Skill

للمزيد من إتقان المهارات اللغوية كراسة المعاصر للمهارات اللغوية فى نهاية الكتاب

A blog has some features
المدونة لها بعض السمات

1. **Clear title** عنوان واضح
   tells readers what the blog post is about
   لاخبار القراء بما يدور حوله منشور المدونة.
   "A visit to St. Catherine Mountain"

2. **Writer's name** اسم الكاتب
   shows who wrote the blog post.
   يوضح من قام بكتابة منشور المدونة.
   "By Tarek"

3. **Date** التاريخ
   shows when the blog post was written.
   يوضح الوقت الذى كتب فيه منشور المدونة.
   "March 15, 2024"

4. **Descriptive words** كلمات وصفية
   help readers imagine and picture what you're writing about, like تساعد القارىء على تخيل وتصور ما نكتب عنه, مثل
   "interesting, popular"

5. **Interesting details** تفاصيل شيقة

6. **Pictures - Drawings** صور و رسومات

How to write a blog post about a place in Egypt.

1. Where is the place ?
   اين المكان ؟
2. Why is it popular ?
   لماذا هو مشهور؟
3. What can people see there ?
   ماذا يمكن للناس رؤيته هناك ؟
4. What do visitors wear ?
   ماذا يرتدى الزوار ؟
5. What do visitors do there ?
   ماذا يفعل الزوار هناك ؟
6. What do visitors like about it?
   ماذا يحب الزوار فى هذا المكان ؟

Scanned with CamScanner

Tip !

- Good descriptive writing uses sense words.

تستخدم الكتابة الوصفية الجيدة كلمات التعبير عن الحواس.

- If you write about how the place looks, sounds, smells, and feels like, the reader will be able to imagine it.

إذا كتبت عن شكل المكان وأصواته، ورائحته ، وملمسة، فسيكون القارئ قادر على تخيله.

- If you talk about the beach, you can say : إذا تحدثت عن الشاطئ، يمكنك أن تقول :

Ex: - "The air tastes salty".

A leaflet

Making a leaflet about the Siwa Oasis

عمل كتيب عن واحة سيوة

The leaflet has: يحتوى الكتيب على :

main heading	sub-heading	image	detailed description	call to action
عنوان رئيسى	عنوان فرعى	صورة	وصف تفصيلى	دعوة لاتخاذ إجراء

1. A main heading is the big title at the top. العنوان الرئيسى هو العنوان الكبير فى الأعلى.
2. A sub-heading is the smaller title. - العنوان الفرعى هو العنوان الأصغر.
3. An image is a photo or drawing. - الصورة هى صورة فوتوغرافية أو رسمية.
4. A detailed description gives reasons to visit and advice on what to expect. - الوصف التفصيلى يقدم أسبابًا للزيارة ونصائح حول ما يمكن توقعه.
5. A call to action is an invitation. - الدعوة لاتخاذ القرار هى دعوة.

Welcome to the Siwa Oasis!

PLACES TO SEE	LOCAL FOOD	WHAT TO WEAR
Salt Lake[1] swim and take photos[2] **Desert** see sunset[3]	**Sweet dates** fresh[4] from palm trees **Good olive oil** excellent price	**Daytime** summer clothes **Night time** - bring a **jacket**

Book now[5] : ☎ +2010xxxxxxx siwa@trip.com

١. بحيرة مالحة ٢. صور فوتوغرافية ٣. غروب الشمس ٤. طازج ٥. احجز الان

Scanned with CamScanner

General Exercises On Lessons 4 & 5

نصوص الاستماع والتقييمات في نهاية الكتاب

EL-MOASSER Exercises تدريبات المعاصر

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False. استمع إلى معلمك واكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ.

1. Siwa Oasis is famous for its natural beauty. [ ]
2. Many tourists visit it to relax and enjoy nature. [ ]
3. At the Salt Lake, we can swim and read books. [ ]
4. People can eat sweet apples in Siwa Oasis. [ ]

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

visitors – olive – visit – Lake – Oasis

Siwa Oasis is an amazing place in Egypt. Many people (1) ..... it every year to enjoy the nature. You can do many activities there. You can swim in the Salt (2) ..... . Siwa (3) ..... is famous for the sweet dates. They are fresh from palm trees. It's also famous for its good (4) ..... oil.

3 Read the text and answer the questions.

Many tourists visit St. Catherine Mountain in South Sinai, Egypt. They wake up early to climb, and wear warm clothes because it's cold. Along the way, they see colorful rocks and small plants, and some take pictures. At the top, they visit the old monastery and learn about its history. St. Catherine is a popular place for nature, adventure, and fun with friends and family. People visit it to learn about history and enjoy the natural world.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Tourists see colorful ..... and small plants.

   a. breaks b. trees c. flowers d. rocks

2. At the top, tourists visit the old ..... .

   a. mountain b. hill c. monastery d. place

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Where is St. Catherine Mountain located ?

   .....

4. What do tourists wear when they climb the mountain ?

   .....

5. Why do people visit St. Catherine Mountain ?

   .....

Scanned with CamScanner

General Exercises On Lessons 4 & 5

نصوص الاستماع والتقييمات في نهاية الكتاب

SB, AB & Previous Exams

تدريبات كتاب الطالب والتقييمات والاختبارات السابقة

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. AB People wear light ..... during the day in Siwa.
   a. clothes b. shoes c. bags d. hats
2. AB You can see palm ..... around the lake and desert.
   a. branches b. leaves c. trees d. plants
3. My school is ..... to my house. [المنوفية - الشهداء ٢٠٢٦]
   a. next b. behind c. front d. between
4. AB You can buy ..... oil at a good price in Siwa Oasis. [سوهاج - اخميم ٢٠٢٦]
   a. sweet b. colorful c. salt d. olive
5. The dog was ..... the chair. [الفيوم - ابشواى ٢٠٢٦]
   a. in b. next c. front d. behind
6. AB St. Catherine Mountain is ..... South Sinai.
   a. in b. to c. next d. between

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. SB The cat is ..... **[between]** the box.
2. The farm is ..... **[behind]** to the factory. [القاهرة - عين شمس ٢٠٢٦]
3. Ahlam is standing ..... **[next]** Manar and Nour. [البحيره - حوش عيسى ٢٠٢٦]
4. The kitchen is ..... **[on]** front of the living room. [المنيا - المنيا ٢٠٢٦]

3 Write a blog post of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below. Your name is Tarek.

يجاب عنها في نهاية الكتاب

A visit to St. Catherine Mountain

Guiding words :

- clothes
- adventure
- monastery

[الجيزه - جنوب الجيزة ٢٠٢٦]

Rewind

نشط ذاكرتك وأكمل الرحلة

Vocabulary

يلا نرجع بسرعة نفتكر المفردات اللغوية في الوحدات السابقة

sight	حاسة الإبصار	volunteer	يتطوع	region	منطقة / إقليم
jingling sound	صوت رنين خفيف	traffic	حركة مرور	neighborhood	حى
get dressed	يرتدى	solutions	حلول	forest guide	مرشد في الغابة
feed	يُطعم	culture	ثقافة	pet	حيوان أليف

Scanned with CamScanner

Skills 1 Reading Comprehension

Describe the relationship between two people, events, ideas or pieces of information

تختبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مدى إتقانك لمهارة القراءة.

التحدى قد تجد صعوبة فى وصف علاقة بين شخصين، حدثين، فكرتين أو معلومتين.

مفتاح الحل يعتمد هذا السؤال على قراءة النص جيداً أكثر من مرة للتمكن من فهم الترابط الموجود بين الأفكار والمعلومات الواردة فى النص.

1 Learn تعلم كيفية الإجابة.

Read and learn how to answer:

Our city has many important places that help people every day. One important place is the school. Students go there to learn and meet friends. Teachers help them, and the library has many books to read or borrow. Another important place is the hospital. Doctors and nurses help sick people feel better.

1. Where can people read books ?

-In the library.

2. Why is the hospital an important place ?

- Because doctors and nurses help sick people feel better.

شرح الحل
اقرأ النص جيداً وتفهم الترابط بين الأشخاص والأحداث والمعلومات الواردة

2 Master اتقن طريقة حل السؤال (متبعاً الخطوة الأولى)

Read and answer the questions :

Many tourists visit St. Catherine Mountain in South Sinai, Egypt. They wake up early to climb, and wear warm clothes because it's cold. Along the way, they see colorful rocks and small plants, and some take pictures. At the top, they visit the old monastery and learn about its history.

St. Catherine is a popular place for nature, adventure, and fun with friends and family. People can learn about history and enjoy the natural world.

1. Where's St. Catherine Mountain ?

.....

2. What do tourists do at the top of St. Catherine Mountain ?

.....

Scanned with CamScanner

2 Review, Practice & Master
for Correction Notes

الهدف من هذا الجزء
- التأكيد على فهم الطالب للقواعد اللغوية.
- اكتساب الطالب مهارة التعامل مع سؤال تصحيح الخطأ.

Review راجع القاعدة وتأكد من فهمك

Prepositions of Place حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان

in فى - on على - in front of أمام - next to بجانب - between بين - behind خلف

Practice تدرب على كيفية التعامل مع السؤال

Sentence	Correction	Reason
1 The book is ..... [in] the table.	on	نستخدم [on] بمعنى على
2 The Sphinx is next ..... [at] the Pyramids.	to	نستخدم [to] لوجود [next]
3 The boat is ..... [under] the Nile River.	on	نستخدم [on] بمعنى على سطح ماء [نهر النيل]
4 The post office is ..... [next] the school and the hospital.	between	نستخدم [between] لوجود مكانين

Master أتقن طريقة حل السؤال

Write the reason. معرفة الطالب لسبب الإجابة يؤكد استيعابه للقاعدة المطلوبة.

1 We can find many books..... [on] the library.	in	.....
2 The cat is in front ..... [off] the box.	of	.....
3 The hospital is ..... [between] to the school.	next	.....
4 My family picture is ..... [in] the wall.	on	.....

Write the correction. اكتب التصحيح.

1 The cat is ..... [next] the bed and the table.	.....	لوجود مكانين
2 The car is ..... [on] front of the park.	.....	لوجود front of في الجملة
3 The gifts are ..... [on] the bazaar.	.....	لان الهدايا موجودة في البازار
4 The museum is next ..... [of] the post office.	.....	لوجود next

Scanned with CamScanner

3 Sentence Building

الهدف من هذا الجزء تعلم كيف تكون وترتب جمل وأسئلة

١ الجملة الخبرية

1. work - tour - a - I - guide - as.
2. mall - stores - many - The shopping - has.
3. help - people - Doctors - sick.
4. has - of - trees - Siwa - lots - Oasis.
5. has - books - The library - many.

	١ فاعل	٢ فعل	٣ باقى الجملة
1.			
2.		has	
3.			
4.	Siwa Oasis		
5.			many books.

1 Subject Detective

مين صاحب الفعل؟

ابحث عن الفاعل

أمثلة من الجمل:

1. The shopping mall
   فاعل الجملة الثانية
2. The library
   فاعل الجملة الخامسة

الفاعل هو الشخص أو الشيء الذي يقوم بالفعل.

2 Verb Hunter

بيعمل إيه؟

ابحث عن الفعل

أمثلة من الجمل:

1. work
   فعل الجملة الأولى
2. help
   فعل الجملة الثالثة

الفعل هو الحركة أو الحدث في الجملة.

٢ الجملة الاستفهامية

1. can - Where - go - we - to borrow - books ?
2. do - Which places - like - to - you - visit ?
3. can - people - What - do - the post office - at ?
4. at the Pyramids - What - tourists - do - do ?

	١ كلمة استفهام	٢ فعل مساعد	٣ فاعل	٤ فعل	٥ باقى السؤال ؟
1.		can			
2.			you		
3.				do	
4.					

3 Helper Team

مين بيساعدنا؟

الأفعال المساعدة

Do
تستخدم مع:
I, you, we, they

Can
تستخدم مع:
I, you, we, they
he, she, it

الأفعال المساعدة تأتي قبل الفاعل في السؤال.

4 The Wh-Team

نسأل ازاى؟

أدوات الاستفهام

- Where [أين]: للسؤال عن المكان.
- What [ما/ماذا]: للسؤال عن شيء.

أداة الاستفهام تأتي دائمًا في بداية السؤال.

Scanned with CamScanner

4 Build Your Topic

اكتب موضوعك خطوة بخطوة

1. Word Bank

قم بقراءة المفردات اللغوية وتعلم كيفية استخدامها فى جُمل.

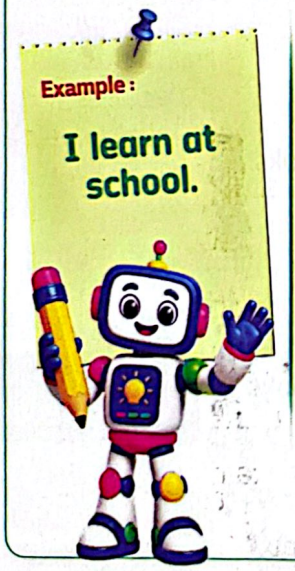
▸ **Use the words in the table to make sentences.**

subject	verb	rest of the sentence
The Pyramids	are	very nice.
The Egyptian Museum	has	many treasures.
The Cairo Tower	is	very tall.
My school	is	very big.
I	learn	at school.
My teachers	help	me.

2. Sentence Machine

قم بترتيب الجُمل التالية لتكون جُمل مناسبة عند كتابة فقرات إنشائية.

▸ **Put the words in the correct order to form sentences.**



1. very - The Pyramids - nice - are.
.....
2. treasures - has - The Egyptian Museum - many.
.....
3. tall - The Cairo - very - is - Tower.
.....
4. is - My school - big - very.
.....
5. school - learn - I - at.
.....
6. teachers - My - help - me.
.....

3. Make your own paragraph

قم بقراءة الجُمل [٦] السابقة ثم تصنيفها على حسب كل فقرة إنشائية مطلوب كتابتها من الفقرات التالية.

Write a paragraph about places in Egypt.

.....

.....

.....

Write a paragraph about your school.

.....

.....

.....

Scanned with CamScanner

5 Important Topics

تعتبر مهارة الكتابة من المهارات الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة او موضوع لذا يجب استخدام جمل وأفكار مترابطة. قم بقراءة هذه الجمل لتساعدك على التعامل مع مهارة الكتابة (٢٢ جملة).

1 Amazing places in Egypt

The Pyramids in Egypt are very nice[1]. Tourists take many pictures there[2]. They can ride camels, too[3]. The Egyptian Museum is an amazing place[4]. It has many treasures to see[5]. Khan Al-Khalili Bazaar is a busy market[6]. Many people go there to buy gifts[7].

2 Places in your city

All places in my city are important[8]. Students go to school to learn and meet friends[9]. Doctors and nurses help sick people feel better in the hospital[10]. The post office helps us stay connected[11]. People send letters and packages at the post office[12].

3 St. Catherine Mountain

Many tourists visit St. Catherine Mountain[13]. They wake up early to climb the mountain [14]. They wear warm clothes[15]. Along the way, they see colorful rocks[16]. St. Catherine is a popular place for nature and adventure[17]. People can enjoy the natural world there[18].

4 Siwa Oasis

Siwa Oasis is a very beautiful place to visit[19]. You can swim in the Salt Lake and take photos[20]. You can also go to the desert to see the sunset[21]. Siwa has delicious sweet dates and good olive oil[22].

From Sentences to Topics

- A Start with a capital letter.
- Use the correct tense.
- Put the words in the correct order.
- End with a full stop.

Scanned with CamScanner

Review through the Exam on Unit 4

مراجعة الوحدة من خلال اختبارات المحافظات وكتاب الطالب والتقييمات

15 Vocabulary

أهم 15 مفردة لغوية وردت فى كتاب الطالب والتقييمات والمحافظات (التى تمكن الطالب من اجتياز أى امتحان).

Khan Al-Khalili Bazaar	سوق خان الخليلى	Pyramids	الاهرامات	shopping mall	مركز تجارى
tour guide	مرشد سياحى	post office	مكتب البريد	school	مدرسة
Nile River	نهر النيل	library	مكتبة	palm trees	اشجار النخيل
oasis	واحة	museum	متحف	Salt Lake	البحيرة المالحة
Cairo Tower	برج القاهرة	hospital	مستشفى	gift	هدية

15 Vocabulary through the Exam

جمل مختارة على المفردات اللغوية من الأسئلة الأكثر شيوعاً فى كتاب الطالب والتقييمات والاختبارات السابقة.
ذاكرها وهتقابلها كثير فى الامتحان.

1. Tourists go to Khan Al-Khalili Bazaar[1] to buy gifts.
2. The tour guide[2] explains the history to the tourists.
3. The Nile River[3] is a very long river in Egypt.
4. An oasis[4] is a place with water and trees in the desert.
5. The Cairo Tower[5] is very tall. We can see Cairo from the top.
6. People used giant stones to build the Pyramids[6].
7. We send letters at the post office[7].
8. We can borrow books from the library[8].
9. The museum[9] is a place where we can see treasures.
10. The hospital[10] is a place where doctors help sick people.
11. The shopping mall[11] is a place with many stores.
12. The school[12] is a place where students learn.
13. Sweet dates are fresh from palm trees[13].
14. Tourists can swim and take photos at the Salt Lake[14].
15. I bought a gift[15] for my mom's birthday.

[1] القاهرة - المعصرة	[2] الاسكندرية - الجمرك	[3] كتاب الطالب	[4] كتاب التقييمات	[5] كتاب الطالب
[6] كتاب الطالب	[7] الغربية - كفرالزيات	[8] الجيزة - اوسيم	[9] كفر الشيخ - دسوق	[10] القاهرة - المرج
[11] الجيزة - العياط	[12] المنوفية - بركة السبع	[13] كتاب القيبمات	[14] كتاب التقييمات	[15] الشرقية - منيا القمح

Scanned with CamScanner

Language

القواعد اللغوية الهامة التى وردت فى كتاب الطالب والتقييمات والمحافظات
(التى تمكن الطالب من اجتياز أى امتحان)

Prepositions of place

• We use prepositions of place to show where things are.

- نستخدم حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان لنذكر مكان شئ ما.

behind خلف	in front of أمام	on على
in فى	between بين	next to بجانب

Language through the Exam

جمل مختارة على القواعد اللغوية من الأسئلة الأكثر شيوعاً فى كتاب الطالب والتقييمات والاختبارات السابقة.
ذاكرها وهتقابلها كتير فى الامتحان.

1. The dog is standing in front of the door.
2. The flower is growing in the pot.
3. The library is next to the museum.
4. There are two books on the shelf.
5. The flowers are between two trees.

(كتاب الطالب / كتاب التقييمات / القاهرة - شبرا / البحيرة - ادكو / كتاب الطالب)

Reading & Writing through the Exam

الموضوعات الأكثر شيوعًا فى كتاب الطالب والتقييمات والاختبارات السابقة. ذاكرها وهتقابلها كتير فى الامتحان.

1. Read and write.

St. Catherine Mountain

St. Catherine Mountain is in South Sinai. Many **tourists** visit it every year. They wear warm **clothes** because it's cold. They see colorful **rocks** and small **plants**. They visit the old **monastery** at the top.

Vocabulary

استخرج المعنى من النص واكتبه:

دير .....
صخور .....
نباتات .....
ملابس .....
سياح .....

2. Reorder and write.

1. old - They - monastery - visit - the.
.....
2. see - rocks - They - colorful.
.....
3. wear - They - clothes - warm.
.....

3. Write about

• St. Catherine Mountain
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

Scanned with CamScanner

Sample Test 7

On Unit 4

نصوص الاستماع والتقييمات في نهاية الكتاب

اختبار المعاصر

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False. استمع إلى معلمك و اكتب (T) صح او (F) خطأ.

1. Fareeda likes shopping. [ ]
2. Fareeda's favorite place is the shopping mall. [ ]
3. The shopping mall has many parks and restaurants. [ ]
4. Behind the shopping mall, there is a museum. [ ]

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Ali took many ..... with his new camera.
   a. pictures b. towers c. bazaars d. gifts
2. Our teacher is standing ..... to the board.
   a. front b. between c. next d. behind
3. There are a lot of ..... in the museums.
   a. packages b. treasures c. stores d. letters
4. I bought a/an ..... for my mom's birthday.
   a. view b. adventure c. nature d. gift
5. The bird is ..... the tree.
   a. between b. on c. next d. front
6. The chair is ..... two tables.
   a. between b. in c. next d. on

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

monastery – warm – people – rocks – pictures

Many tourists visit St. Catherine Mountain in South Sinai, Egypt. They wake up early to climb, and wear (1) ..... clothes because it's cold. Along the way, they see colorful (2) ..... and small plants, and some tourists take (3) ..... . At the top, they visit the old (4) ..... and learn about its history.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Our city has many important places. These places help people every day. One of these places is the post office. It is in a **quiet** street. It is next to a big hospital. It is always crowded in the morning. At the post office, people send letters and packages. They send them to family and friends. The post office helps people stay connected.

Scanned with CamScanner

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The underlined word "quiet" means "……".

a. clean b. busy c. noisy d. calm

2. The post office helps people stay …… .

a. connected b. healthy c. friendly d. honest

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Where is the post office?

……

4. What do people do at the post office ?

……

5. Summarize the text in one sentence.

……

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. My school is …… **(on)** the park and the museum.
2. The vase is …… **(in)** the table.
3. The garage is in front …… **(to)** the shopping mall.
4. The lamp is next …… **(of)** the desk.

6 Punctuate the following.

1. what can people do at the shopping mall

……

2. khan Al-Khalili Bazaar is a busy market

……

7 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below.

Schools

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Guiding words :

• subject • learn • library

……

……

……

……

……

……

Scanned with CamScanner

Sample Test 8 On Unit 4

نصوص الاستماع والتقييمات في نهاية الكتاب

اختبار مجمع من كتاب الطالب والتقييمات والاختبارات السابقة

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False. استمع إلى معلمك و اكتب (T) صح او (F) خطأ.

1. You can swim in the desert. [ ]
2. You can see the sunset in the Salt Lake. [ ]
3. Siwa Oasis has sweet dates and olive oil. [ ]
4. You should wear a jacket during the day. [ ]

(القاهرة ـ النزهة ٢٠٢٦)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. AB People buy ..... from the bazaar.
   a. gifts b. history c. camels d. plants
2. It's a good idea to bring a ..... at night in Siwa Oasis.

   (السويس ـ جنوب السويس ٢٠٢٦)

   a. hat b. jacket c. swimming suit d. T-shirt
3. AB You can see Cairo from the top of Cairo .....
   a. Nile b. Museum c. Tower d. Oasis
4. The sandwich is ..... the juice and the salad. (الغربية ـ شرق المحلة ٢٠٢٦)
   a. under b. in c. between d. on
5. Salma is standing ..... the door. I can't see her. (البحيرة ـ المحمودية ٢٠٢٦)
   a. behind b. under c. in d. on
6. SB My shoes are ..... to the bed.
   a. behind b. on c. under d. next

3 AB Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

colorful - famous - monastery - top - climb

St. Catherine Mountain is in South Sinai. It is a (1) ..... place. People come to (2) ..... the mountain. They see (3) ..... rocks, green plants, and sometimes animals. When they reach the top , they visit the old (4) ..... .

4 AB Read the text and answer the questions.

The library is a quiet place in the city. We go there to read or borrow books. It has books about animals, science, and history. Some people go to study or do their homework. There are chairs and tables for reading. The library helps people learn more. It is usually open during the day. You must be quiet inside the library and keep it clean.

Scanned with CamScanner

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. We go to the library to ..... books.
   a. eat b. borrow c. throw d. sell
2. You must be quiet inside the ..... .
   a. shop b. school c. library d. street

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What can people do at the library?

   .....

4. What kind of books does the library have ?

   .....

5. How does the library help people ?

   .....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. AB She stands ..... **[in]** of the board.
2. The chair is ..... **[next]** the two beds. [القليوبية ـ شرق شبرا الخيمة ٢٠٢٦]
3. AB The flower is growing ..... **[on]** the pot.
4. The bag is ..... **[behind]** to the door. [الجيزة ـ البدرشين ٢٠٢٦]

6 Punctuate the following.

1. SB we went to Siwa Oasis

   .....

2. why do tourists go to Khan Al-Khalili [الإسكندرية ـ برج العرب ٢٠٢٦]

   .....

7 AB Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below.

Climbing the mountain مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Guiding words :

• adventure • colorful • have fun

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

[كفر الشيخ ـ سيدى سالم ٢٠٢٦]

Scanned with CamScanner

Sample Test 1 for Al-Azhar students On Unit 4

اختبار لطلاب الأزهر الشريف

1 Listen and choose the correct answer.

1. Many tourists visit St. Catherine Mountain in ..... Sinai.
   a. East b. North c. South d. West
2. Tourists wake up early to climb the ..... .
   a. tower b. mountain c. wall d. tree
3. Tourists wear warm clothes because it is ..... .
   a. windy b. hot c. cold d. sunny

2 Read and complete the dialog.

stores - favorite - eat - shopping mall

Ayman : What is your [1] ..... place in your city ?

Maged : My favorite place is the [2] ..... .

Ayman : Why do you like the shopping mall ?

Maged : Because it has many [3] ..... .

Ayman : What can people do there ?

Maged : They can buy things and [4] ..... there.

3 Choose the correct answer.

1. I have lunch with my family in a nice ..... .
   a. restaurant b. museum c. market d. library
2. There are lots of trees in the Siwa ..... .
   a. Museum b. Oasis c. Lake d. Tower
3. We took photos ..... front of the museum.
   a. by b. at c. in d. on
4. I put my bag ..... to the desk.
   a. on b. behind c. front d. next

4 Read and correct the underlined mistakes.

1. The kids are playing **between** the park. [.....]
2. There are many trees in front **to** my house. [.....]
3. The hospital is **on** the bank and the museum. [.....]
4. There is a chair **front** to the table. [.....]

5 Read the following passage, then answer the questions.

The Pyramids are one of the most famous places in Egypt. Many tourists visit them every year. They take pictures and enjoy camel rides near the Pyramids. People love learning about how the Pyramids were built using big stones. After seeing the Pyramids, visitors often go to the Egyptian Museum to see old treasures.

A. Read and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. Many tourists visit the Pyramids every year. [ ]
2. Visitors often go to the Egyptian Museum to see old books. [ ]

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

3. The Pyramids are very ..... .
   a. short b. famous c. new d. quiet
4. Many tourists take ..... near the Pyramids.
   a. books b. food c. pictures d. tickets
5. People love learning about how the Pyramids were built using big ..... .
   a. pictures b. stones c. doors d. plants

6 Write a short paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences on.

Siwa Oasis مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

• Salt Lake • sunset • trees • dates

.....

.....

.....

.....

نصوص الاستماع والتقييمات فى نهاية الكتاب

Scanned with CamScanner

Sample Test 2 for Al-Azhar students On Unit 4

اختبار لطلاب الأزهر الشريف

1 Listen and choose the correct answer.

1. Ali enjoys visiting the school library every ..... .
   a. day b. week c. year d. month
2. The library is ..... .
   a. quiet b. noisy c. crowded d. busy
3. Ali likes reading stories about ..... .
   a. animals b. culture c. jobs d. plants

2 Read and complete the dialog.

Egyptian Museum - places - treasures - history

Amany : Which [1] ..... do you like to visit ?

Reham : I like to visit the [2] ..... .

Amany : Why ?

Reham : Because the Egyptian Museum has many [3] ..... .

Amany : That's great! And we can also learn about [4] ..... .

3 Choose the correct answer.

1. We went to the ..... because my brother was sick.
   a. museum b. library c. hospital d. post office
2. Farmers collect ..... from palm trees.
   a. toys b. coins c. bottles d. dates
3. The bus stopped in ..... of the station.
   a. next b. front c. behind d. between
4. There is a pencil ..... the table.
   a. in b. next c. between d. on

4 Read and correct the underlined mistakes.

1. There are many buses **behind** to the park. [.....]
2. There are two books **next** the shelf. [.....]
3. Are there any apples **on** the fridge ? [.....]
4. My cat hides **between** the bed. [.....]

5 Read the following passage, then answer the questions.

Omar works as a tour guide in Egypt. He shows tourists **amazing** places like the Pyramids and the Egyptian Museum. At the Pyramids, tourists can ride camels and take many pictures. At the museum, they can see treasures and learn about history. Omar loves his job because he gets to share Egypt's culture.

A. Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1. At the Pyramids,tourists can take many pictures. [ ]
2. Tourists can see animals at the museum. [ ]

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

3. Omar works as a ..... .
   a. doctor b. tour guide c. police officer d. teacher
4. The underlined word "**amazing**" means ..... .
   a. light b. clever c. usual d. wonderful
5. At the Pyramids, tourists can ride ..... .
   a. bikes b. ships c. camels d. boats

6 Write a short paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences on.

Amazing Places in Egypt

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

• museum • treasures • market • gifts

.....

.....

.....

.....

نصوص الاستماع والتفريغات في نهاية الكتاب

Scanned with CamScanner

تنويه
- علامة SB تشير إلى تدريبات كتاب الطالب
- علامة AB تشير إلى تدريبات كتاب التقييمات

UNIT 5

A Day at Work

يوم فى العمـل

Learning Outcomes

Listening
- Identify the roles of different jobs in a conversation
- Produce long vowel sounds with silent 'e'

- يتعرف على أدوار الوظائف المختلفة من خلال الاستماع إلى محادثة
- ينطق الأصوات الممدودة للكلمات التى تنتهى بالحرف الصامت 'e'

Reading
- Answer comprehension questions about different jobs according to the information in a reading text
- Identify main ideas in a story setting

- يجيب عن أسئلة فهم متعلقة بالوظائف المختلفة وفقًا للمعلومات الواردة فى نص القراءة
- يتعرف على الأفكار الرئيسية فى مكان وزمان القصة

Speaking
- Discuss significance of different jobs/ uniforms
- Use superlative adjectives in sentences

- يناقش أهمية الوظائف المختلفة والأزياء الخاصة بهم
- يستخدم صفات التفضيل فى جمل

Writing
- Write non-fiction texts to reflect the components of a paragraph about jobs
- Provide a different ending to a story

- يكتب نصوص (قصص) واقعية لتعكس مكونات فقرة إنشائية عن الوظائف
- يقدم نهاية مختلفة لقصة

Scanned with CamScanner

LESSON 1

Different Jobs

I Vocabulary

قاموس المعاصر الناطق

Key vocabulary

المفردات اللغوية الأساسية موضع الامتحان [كما وردت فى كتاب الطالب]

doctor
طبيب

nurse
ممرضة

teacher
مُعلمة

engineer
مهندس

firefighter
رجل إطفاء

police officer
ضابط شرطة

vest	سترة/ قميص [بدون اكمام]	costume	زى خاص	helmet	خوذة

Extra vocabulary

المفردات اللغوية المساعدة فى التعامل مع الورقة الامتحانية

coat	معطف	sick people	المرضى	patients	مرضى
cap	قبعة	health	صحة	uniform	زى موحد

• Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present		Past
design	يصمم	designed
check	يفحص / يختبر	checked
save	ينقذ	saved

Irregular

Present		Past
wear	يرتدى	wore
grow up	يكبر	grew up

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

care for	يعتنى بـ	design buildings	يصمم منشآت/مبانى
stop fires	يوقف / يطفئ الحرائق	Well done!	أحسنت صنعًا!
give care	يقدم الرعاية		

Scanned with CamScanner

Main points on listening and reading texts نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع و القراءة

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Different jobs	doctors - sick	Doctors wear white coats and help sick people. يرتدي الأطباء المعاطف البيضاء ويساعدون المرضي.
	engineers - design	Engineers wear yellow helmets and design new buildings. يرتدي المهندسون خوذات صفراء ويصممون مباني جديدة.
	nurses - patients	Nurses help the doctors and care for the patients. تساعد الممرضات الأطباء ويعتنون بالمرضي.
	firefighters - fires	Firefighters save people from fires. رجال الإطفاء ينقذون الناس من الحريق.

Jobs & Uniforms الوظائف والزي الرسمي

• **Look, read and identify.** انظر، اقرأ وتعرف.

1. **A doctor** helps sick people. He wears a white coat.
يساعد الطبيب المرضى. يرتدى الطبيب معطف ابيض.

2. **A police officer** protects the people. He wears a white uniform and a cap.
يحمى ضابط الشرطة الناس. يرتدى زى ابيض وقبعة.

3. **An engineer** designs new buildings. He wears a yellow helmet and a vest.
يصمم المهندس مبانى جديدة. يرتدى المهندس خوذة صفراء اللون وقميص بدون أكمام.

4. **A firefighter** saves people from fires. He wears a blue uniform and a red helmet.
يقوم رجل المطافى بإنقاذ الناس من الحريق. يرتدي رجل المطافي زى موحد أزرق وقبعة حمراء.

5. **A nurse** helps the doctors and patients. She wears a blue uniform and a cap.
تساعد الممرضة الأطباء والمرضى. ترتدى زى أزرق وقبعة.

Scanned with CamScanner

Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات المعاصر

1. The doctor wears a long white ..... .
   a. hat b. coat c. helmet d. shirt
2. I wear a/an ..... to protect my head.
   a. helmet b. umbrella c. belt d. coat
3. A/An ..... helps doctors at the hospital.
   a. engineer b. firefighter c. teacher d. nurse
4. The brave ..... stopped the fire.
   a. doctors b. nurses c. firefighters d. farmers
5. Doctors ..... our health.
   a. check b. fix c. stop d. build

SB, AB & Previous Exams تدريبات كتاب الطالب والتقييمات والاختبارات السابقة

6. AB The police officer wears a white ..... and a cap.
   a. coat b. uniform c. vest d. helmet
7. AB The firefighter's job is important because he ..... people.
   a. saves b. sells c. sends d. sees
8. SB A/An ..... designs new buildings. [كفر الشيخ - دسوق ٢٠٢٦]
   a. doctor b. engineer c. police officer d. teacher
9. SB A ..... helps sick people.
   a. police officer b. teacher c. firefighter d. doctor
10. We wear funny ..... for the school party. [المنوفية - شبين الكوم ٢٠٢٦]
    a. drinks b. toys c. books d. costumes

Scanned with CamScanner

II Listening and Reading

• **Listen and read.** استمع واقرأ.

When I grow up .....

Ms. Hala is talking to her students about what they want to be when they grow up.
تتحدث الأستاذة هالة مع طلابها عن ماذا يريدون أن يكونوا عندما يكبروا.

Ms. Hala: Good morning, dear students! Let's talk about your **costumes**[1].
الأستاذة هالة : صباح الخير، طلابى الأعزاء ! هيا نتحدث عن زيكم الخاص.

Sara : I'm a doctor. I wear a white **coat**[2].
سارة : أنا طبيبة. أرتدى معطف أبيض.

Ms. Hala: What do you do at your job ?
الأستاذة هالة : ماذا تفعلين فى مهنتك ؟

Sara : I help **sick**[3] people and **check**[4] their health.
سارة : أساعد المرضي وافحص صحتهم.

Ali : I'm an engineer. I wear a yellow **helmet**[5].
على : أنا مهندس، أرتدى خوذة صفراء اللون.

Ms. Hala: What do you do at your job ?
الأستاذة هاله : ماذا تفعل فى مهنتك ؟

Ali : I **design**[6] new buildings.
على : أصمم مبانى جديدة.

Talla : I'm a nurse. I wear a blue **uniform**[7].
تاليا : أنا ممرضة. ارتدى زى أزرق اللون.

Ms. Hala: What do you do at your job ?
الأستاذة هالة : ماذا تفعلين فى مهنتك ؟

Talla : I help the doctors and care for the **patients**[8].
تاليا: أساعد الأطباء و اعتنى بالمرضى.

Omar : I'm a **firefighter**[9]. I wear a blue uniform.
عمر: أنا رجل إطفاء. أرتدى زى أزرق اللون.

Ms. Hala: What do you do at your job ?
الأستاذة هالة : ماذا تفعل فى مهنتك ؟

Omar : I stop fires and **save**[10] people.
عمر: اخمد النيران وأنقذ الناس.

Ms. Hala: All your jobs are really important. Well done!
الأستاذة هالة : كل وظائفكم مهمة حقًا. أحسنتم!

[1] أزياء خاصة
[2] معطف
[3] مريض
[4] يفحص
[5] خوذه
[6] يصمم
[7] زى موحد
[8] مرضى
[9] رجل إطفاء
[10] ينقذ

Demonstrate understanding of specific details.
وضح فهمك للتفاصيل المحددة.

Learn 1. The firefighter stops..... .
a. water b. pollution c. fires d. rocks

Practice 2. Doctors..... people's health .
a. check b. ask c. draw d. wear

Scanned with CamScanner

General Exercises On Lesson 1

نصوص الاستماع والتقييمات في نهاية الكتاب

EL-MOASSER Exercises تدريبات المعاصر

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False. استمع إلى معلمك و اكتب (T) صح او (F) خطأ.

1. Nabila works in a big school. ☐
2. Nabila wears a green uniform. ☐
3. Nabila cares for the patients at the hospital. ☐
4. Nabila is very kind and helpful. ☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. ..... wear a yellow helmet and a vest.
   a. Teachers b. Engineers c. Farmers d. Doctors
2. Parents should care ..... their children.
   a. in b. at c. for d. on
3. ..... help students at school.
   a. Nurses b. Teachers c. Doctors d. Officers
4. A nurse ..... at the hospital.
   a. to work b. work c. works d. working
5. I want to be an engineer when I ..... up.
   a. to grow b. growing c. grow d. grows
6. Yesterday, firefighters worked two hours to stop the ..... .
   a. job b. fires c. lesson d. race

3 Punctuate the following.

1. what do you do at your job

   .....

2. firefighters save people from fires

   .....

4 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below.

What do you want to be when you grow up ?

Guiding elements : مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

• doctor • patients • hospital

.....

.....

.....

.....

Scanned with CamScanner

SB, AB & Previous Exams

تدريبات كتاب الطالب والتقييمات والاختبارات السابقة

1 AB Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

hospital – helmet – patients – white – care

Amr works in a hospital. He is a doctor who wears a [1] ..... coat. Every day he gives [2] ..... to many sick children. He checks on the [3] ..... to make sure they feel better. He loves his job at the [4] ..... .

2 Read the text and answer the questions.

Nurses are kind people who work in hospitals. They take care of patients and help doctors. Nurses give medicine, check patients' temperatures, and make sure patients feel comfortable. Being a nurse is not an easy job. They often work long hours, but they always smile and stay **calm**. Nurses wear blue uniforms and are always ready to help anyone in need. Their work is full of responsibility.

A. Choose the correct answer:

1. The main idea of the text is about "....." .
   a. Patients b. Schools c. Nurses d. Shops
2. The underlined word "**calm**" means ..... .
   a. sad b. quiet c. safe d. busy

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What do nurses give to patients ?

.....

4. Why is the nurse's job difficult ?

.....

5. Where do nurses work ? [المنيا - العدوة ٢٠٢٦]

.....

3 Punctuate the following.

1. AB ali wears a yellow helmet

.....

2. SB what does your father do

.....

Scanned with CamScanner

LESSON 2

Jobs I Love !

I Vocabulary

قاموس المعاصر الناطق

Key vocabulary
المفردات اللغوية الأساسية موضع الامتحان [كما وردت فى كتاب الطالب]

mentor مرشد تعليمى	voice-over actor مؤدى صوتى	wildlife photographer مصور الحياة البرية
shy خجول	puppet دُمية	laughs ضحكات

Extra vocabulary
المفردات اللغوية المساعدة فى التعامل مع الورقة الامتحانية

smart ذكى	cartoons رسوم متحركة	character شخصية
faraway بعيد	loud عالٍ [الصوت]	brave شجاع
high مرتفع	low منخفض	voice صوت [بشرى]
smile ابتسامة	exciting ممتع	real حقيقى - واقعى

• Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present	Past
wait ينتظر	waited
use يستخدم	used

Irregular

Present	Past
become يصبح	became
tell يخبر	told

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

get good marks	يحصل على درجات جيدة	do helpful work	يقوم بعمل مفيد
tell stories	يروى قصص	do well	يقوم بعمل جيد
do many shows	يقدم العديد من العروض		

Main points on listening and reading texts نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع و القراءة

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Four amazing jobs	mentor - grow	A mentor helps young students learn and grow. يساعد المرشد التعليمى الطلاب الصغار ليتعلموا وينموا.
	wildlife photographer	A wildlife photographer takes pictures of wild animals in faraway places. يلتقط مصور الحياة البرية صوراً للحيوانات البرية في أماكن بعيدة
	puppets - stories	Salma uses puppets to tell stories and do many shows for children. تستخدم سلمي الدمي لسرد القصص للأطفال وتقديم العديد من العروض للأطفال
	voice-over actor	A voice-over actor makes voices for cartoons. يقوم المؤدي الصوتي بأداء أصوات الرسوم المتحركة.

Scanned with CamScanner

Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

▸ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات المعاصر

1. Talia can't sing in the show. She is ..... .
   a. brave b. shy c. honest d. fast
2. Ali is ..... . He isn't afraid of dogs.
   a. sad b. funny c. shy d. brave
3. Listen ! This singer has a beautiful ..... .
   a. class b. voice c. uniform d. hospital
4. Kids love watching the puppet ..... .
   a. voice b. match c. show d. race

SB, AB & Previous Exams تدريبات كتاب الطالب والتقييمات والاختبارات السابقة

5. AB Sama loves ..... stories using her puppets.
   a. writing b. watching c. telling d. shouting
6. SB Hana feels happy when her students ..... good marks.
   a. get b. sell c. paint d. wear
7. A ..... helps young students learn and grow. [البحيرة - كوم حمادة ٢٠٢٦]
   a. vet b. mentor c. doctor d. firefighter
8. A ..... takes pictures with a good camera. [الفيوم - ابشواى ٢٠٢٦]
   a. mentor b. police officer c. firefighter d. photographer
9. A voice-over ..... makes different voices for cartoons. [المنيا - ملوى ٢٠٢٦]
   a. actor b. designer c. maker d. driver

II Listening and Reading

Pop Quiz تدرب على قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

Four Amazing Jobs
أربع وظائف رائعة

Noha is a mentor. She does very kind and helpful work! She helps young students learn and grow."I help shy students become brave," she says. "When they get good marks, it feels so nice. It makes me happy when they do well!"

Amr is a wildlife photographer. He has an interesting job! He takes pictures of wild animals. "I find the biggest lions and the smallest birds," he says. "I take great photos in faraway places. Sometimes, I wait a long time to get the best picture!"

Scanned with CamScanner

Salma works with puppets. She has a great job! She uses puppets to tell stories. "I do many shows for children," she says. "I love seeing their big smiles and hearing their loud laughs. It's fun when children enjoy the show!"

Adel is a voice-over actor. He has an exciting job ! He makes voices for cartoons. "I can make high voices and low voices," he says. "I talk very fast or very slow. I make little voices for small characters and loud voices for large ones!"

تعمل نهى كمرشد تعليمى. فهى تقوم بعمل لطيف ومفيد للغاية! إنها تساعد الطلاب الصغار فى التعلم والنمو. تقول نهى: «أنا أساعد الطلاب الذين يشعرون بالخجل ليصبحوا شجعانًا. فعندما يحصلون على درجات جيدة، أشعر بسعادة غامرة .هذا مما يجعلنى سعيدة للغاية عندما يحققون النجاح !».

عمرو يعمل كمصور للحياة البرية. فلدية وظيفة ممتعة! فهو يلتقط صوراً للحيوانات البرية. يقول : «أنا أجد أكبر الأسود وأصغر الطيور. التقط صورًا رائعة فى أماكن بعيدة ، أحياناً انتظر وقتاً طويلاً للحصول على أفضل صورة!»

سلمى تعمل مع الدُمى. لديها وظيفة رائعة ! فهى تستخدم الدُمى لسرد قصصاً. تقول سلمى : «أقدم العديد من العروض للأطفال. أحب أن أرى ابتسامتهم العريضة على وجوههم وأن أسمع صوت ضحكاتهم العالية . إنه أمر ممتع عندما يستمتع الأطفال بالعرض! »

يعمل عادل كمؤدي صوتى. فلديه وظيفة شيقة! يقوم بأداء أصوات الرسوم المتحركة فيقول : «أستطيع إصدار أصوات عالية ومنخفضة».« أتحدث بسرعة كبيرة أو ببطء شديد. أؤدى أصواتًا خافتة للشخصيات الصغيرة وأصواتًا عالية للشخصيات الكبيرة!»

Scanned with CamScanner

III Language in use

Remember :

Comparative adj. : - A zebra is **shorter than** a giraffe.
- Bears are **bigger than** dogs.

Superlative adjectives صفات التفضيل

We use superlative adjectives to show the greatest degree of something.

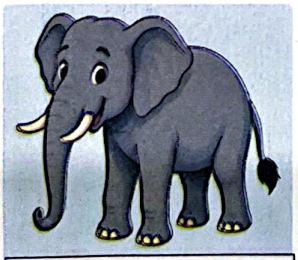
- نستخدم صفات التفضيل لنوضح أعلى درجة من صفة شيء ما .

• عند المقارنة بين أكثر من اثنين [واحد ومجموعة في صفة ذات مقطع واحد] نضع the قبل الصفة ونضيف للصفة [est]:

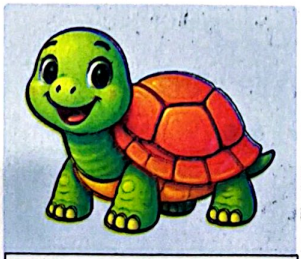
Short adj. الصفات القصيرة → [the + short adj. صفة قصيرة + est]

The + short adj. صفة قصيرة

- معظم الصفات: tall → يضاف إليها → + est → tallest
- المنتهية بـ: حرف متحرك + حرف ساكن في الصفات ذات مقطع واحد big → يضاعف الحرف الأخير + est → biggest
- المنتهية بـ: صفة ذات مقطع واحد منتهية بـ [- e] مثل [nice] → يضاف للصفة [+st] → nicest
- المنتهية بـ: صفة ذات مقطع واحد منتهية بـ [- y] مثل [happy] → حول [- y] لـ [- i] وأضف [+ est] happiest



Elephants are the biggest animals in the zoo.



The turtle is the slowest animal.

My bag is the heaviest bag.

Scanned with CamScanner

Pop Quiz on Language in use

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d..

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات المعاصر

1. Ali is the ..... boy in his family.
   a. youngest b. younger c. young d. younger than
2. Today is ..... coldest day of the year.
   a. then b. the c. that d. this
3. My brother is the ..... player.
   a. fast b. faster than c. fastest d. faster
4. The lion is the ..... animal.
   a. stronger b. strongest c. strong d. stronger than

SB, AB & Previous Exams تدريبات كتاب الطالب والتقييمات والاختبارات السابقة

5. AB My room is the ..... in the house.
   a. cleans b. cleaner c. cleanest d. clean
6. AB This is ..... tallest tree in the garden.
   a. than b. the c. that d. their
7. Omar is the ..... student in our class. [الفيوم - سنورس ٢٠٢٦]
   a. smartest b. smarter c. smart d. smarter than
8. AB The Cairo Tower is the ..... building in Cairo. [المنيا - العدوة ٢٠٢٦]
   a. tallest b. taller c. tall d. as tall
9. SB August is the ..... month of the year.
   a. hot b. hotter c. hotter than d. hottest

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات المعاصر

1. Hurghada is the ..... **(nice)** place for diving.
2. Which animal is ..... **(than)** fastest ?
3. I think turtles are the ..... **(slow)** animal.
4. My teacher is the ..... **(great)** one.
5. The giraffe is ..... **(then)** tallest animal.

SB, AB & Previous Exams تدريبات كتاب الطالب والتقييمات والاختبارات السابقة

6. SB She is the ..... **(kind)** mentor. [الإسكندرية - العامرية ٢٠٢٦]
7. AB The elephant is the ..... **(big)** animal.
8. AB It was the ..... **(funny)** day of the week.
9. AB The Nile River is the ..... **(longer)** one.
10. SB My bag is the ..... **(heavy)** bag.
11. Summer is ..... **(hot)** season in Egypt. [القاهرة - المطرية ٢٠٢٦]
12. Omar is ..... **(than)** bravest firefighter in the town. [الإسكندرية - العامرية ٢٠٢٦]
13. My grandpa is the ..... **(old)** person in my family. [المنيا - ملوى ٢٠٢٦]

Scanned with CamScanner

نصوص الاستماع والتقييمات في نهاية الكتاب

EL-MOASSER Exercises تدريبات المعاصر

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False. استمع إلى معلمك و اكتب (T) صح او (F) خطأ.

1. Salma works with animals. ☐
2. Salma uses puppets to tell stories. ☐
3. She does many shows for children. ☐
4. She loves seeing children cry. ☐

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

long - likes - job - faraway - animals

This is my uncle, Amr. He takes pictures of wild [1] ..... in nature. He finds the biggest lions and the smallest birds. He takes great photos in [2] ..... places. Sometimes, he waits for a very [3] ..... time to get the best picture. He [4] ..... wild animals and being in nature.

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. What is the ..... **(small)** bird in the world?
2. She is the ..... **(short)** girl in the class.
3. This song is ..... **(then)** slowest in the show.
4. My dad is the ..... **(strong)** man.

4 Punctuate the following.

1. a wildlife photographer is an interesting job

.....

2. what do you want to be

.....

5 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

"Amazing jobs"

Guiding elements :

- wildlife photographer
- picture
- cartoons

.....

.....

.....

Scanned with CamScanner

General Exercises On Lesson 2

نصوص الاستماع والتقييمات في نهاية الكتاب

SB, AB & Previous Exams

تدريبات كتاب الطالب والتقييمات والاختبارات السابقة

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. AB Voice-over actors often make cartoons sound more .....
   a. real b. boring c. quiet d. far
2. AB Amr is a wildlife ..... who loves taking pictures.
   a. actor b. photographer c. mentor d. singer
3. SB My grandpa is the ..... person I know. [المنوفية - نلا ٢٠٢٦]
   a. wiser b. wiser than c. wisest d. wise
4. SB Ahmed told us the ..... story at the party. [الاسكندرية - العامرية ٢٠٢٦]
   a. funniest b. funny c. funnier d. fun
5. Cheetahs are the ..... animal. [الفيوم - ابشواى ٢٠٢٦]
   a. fast b. fastest c. faster d. faster than
6. AB Safi does many puppet ..... for children.
   a. shows b. habits c. snacks d. tools

2 AB Read the text and answer the questions.

Dalia is a mentor who helps children learn. She works in a school with many students. Dalia listens to their problems and gives good advice. She also helps with reading and writing. Children trust her because she is kind and calm. Dalia feels proud when her students do well. She says teaching is a job that needs care and love.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Dalia's job is to help students as a ..... .
   a. mentor b. singer c. nurse d. driver
2. Children trust Dalia because she is ..... .
   a. loud b. calm c. funny d. bad

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What does Dalia help children with ?

   .....

4. When does Dalia feel proud ?

   .....

5. What is the general idea of the text ?

   .....

Scanned with CamScanner

Accumulative Dictation

إملاء تراكمى على الدروس

اختبار لقياس وتقييم مدى استيعاب الطالب للمفردات اللغوية.

LESSON 1

engineer	..... ضابط شرطة
costume	..... معلم / معلمة
firefighter	..... ممرضة

LESSON 2

mentor	..... مؤدى صوتى
laughs	..... مصور الحياة البرية
do many shows	..... دمية

LESSONS 1&2

تدريب تراكمى على المفردات اللغوية للدروس الأول والثانى

1. Complete the following sentences using the words from the box.

cartoons - helmet - shy - doctor

1. The ..... helps sick people and checks their health.
2. An engineer wears a yellow ..... and a vest.
3. My brother is ..... when he meets new people.
4. Children enjoy watching ..... .

2. Read and write.

• Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Present		Past
.....	ينقذ	saved
wear	يرتدى	.....
.....	يصمم	designed
become	يصبح	.....

Present		Past
check	يفحص / يختبر	.....
.....	يخبر	told
wait	ينتظر	.....
.....	يستخدم	used

UNIT 5

Scanned with CamScanner

LESSON 3

Story Time : "The Last House"

I Vocabulary

قاموس المعاصر الناطق

Key vocabulary

المفردات اللغوية الأساسية موضع الامتحان [كما وردت فى كتاب الطالب]

carpenter	نجار	fit	يناسب / يلائم
skilled	ماهر / ذو مهارة	shock	صدمة
furniture	أثاث	board	لوح [خشبى]
crooked	مائل / منحنى / معوج	regret	ندم

Extra vocabulary

المفردات اللغوية المساعدة فى التعامل مع الورقة الامتحانية

wooden	خشبى	carelessly	بإهمال	nail	مسمار
usual	عادى / تقليدى	final	نهائى	request	طلب

• Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present		Past	Present		Past
promise	يوعد	promised	hammer	يدق	hammered
admire	يعجب بـ	admired	repair	يصلح	repaired
agree	يقبل	agreed	retire	يتقاعد عن العمل	retired

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

• give his best / do his best	يبذل قصارى جهده	• turn red with regret	يحمر وجه من الندم
• board by board	لوحًا تلو الآخر	• poor work	عمل رديء / ضعيف الجودة
• stand in shock	يقف مصدومًا	• his heart wasn't in it	لم يكن متحمسًا له

• Study these definitions ادرس هذه التعريفات

Word الكلمة	Definition التعريف
fit	to be the right size — أن يكون بالحجم المناسب
wooden	made of wood — مصنوع من الخشب
skilled	very good at doing something — جيداً جداً فى فعل شيء ما
promise	if you promise to do something, it means that you will definitely do it — إذا وعدت بفعل شيء ما، فهذا يعنى أنك ستفعله بالتأكيد

Scanned with CamScanner

Main points on listening and reading texts نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع و القراءة

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
The last house	skilled	Sami was a skilled carpenter. كان سامي نجاراً ماهراً.
	strong – furniture	Sami built strong houses and beautiful furniture. بنى سامي بيوتاً قوية وأثاث جميل.
	hard – stop	After a lifetime of hard work, Sami decided to stop building. بعد سنوات من العمل الشاق، قرر سامي أن يتوقف عن البناء.
	build – house	The king asked Sami to build one last house. طلب الملك من سامى أن يبني منزلاً أخيراً.
	weak – doors	Sami used weak wood to build the house and he didn't check the windows or the doors. استخدم سامي خشب ضعيف في بناء المنزل ولم يفحص النوافذ أو الأبواب جيداً.
	shock - house	Sami stood in shock when he knew the house was for him. شعر سامى بصدمة كبيرة عندما علم أن المنزل كان هدية له.
	regret – promise	Sami felt regret and promised to always do his best. شعر سامى بالندم، ووعد أن يبذل دائماً افضل ما لديه.

Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

• **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات المعاصر

1. They cut trees to make ..... chairs.
   a. glass b. wooden c. plastic d. music
2. I like this jacket, it ..... me.
   a. fits b. hits c. hears d. sits
3. I ..... my parents to study hard to get good marks.
   a. promised b. heard c. fixed d. talked
4. He is a very skilled person. We all ..... his work.
   a. refuse b. throw c. hate d. admire

SB, AB & Previous Exams تدريبات كتاب الطالب والتقييمات والاختبارات السابقة

5. SB The word "....." means very good at doing something.
   a. greedy b. lazy
   c. skilled d. angry [الفيوم - طامية ٢٠٢٦]
6. The ..... uses wood to make beds. [الإسماعيلية - فايد ٢٠٢٦]
   a. actor b. mentor c. painter d. carpenter
7. Beds, chairs and tables are ..... . [أسوهاج - جرجا ٢٠٢٦]
   a. colors b. furniture c. tools d. jobs

Scanned with CamScanner

II Listening and Reading

• **Listen, look and read.** استمع، انظر واقرأ.

The Last House

The Beginning

Sami was a skilled carpenter who lived in a quiet village. For many years, he built strong houses and beautiful furniture. People admired his work, and some traveled from far away just to see his wooden chairs and tables.

The Middle

After a lifetime of hard work, Sami grew tired. He decided it was time to rest and stop building. But before he could retire, the village king came to him with a request. "Please build one last house," the king said. "It will be your final gift to the village."

Sami agreed, but his heart was not in it. He used weak wood. He didn't check the windows or the doors. The windows didn't fit. The doors were crooked. The house looked nothing like his usual careful work.

The End

When the house was finished, Sami gave the keys to the king. The king smiled kindly and said, "This house is for you, Sami. It's a gift for all your wonderful work over the years."

Sami stood in shock. His own poor work was now his home. His face turned red with regret. He had built this house carelessly - and now he had to live in it.

From that day on, Sami promised to always give his best, no matter how tired or busy he felt. He slowly repaired the house, board by board, and made it strong and beautiful again.

And with each nail he hammered, Sami remembered who he truly was.

سامى نجارًا ماهرًا حيث كان يعيش فى قرية هادئة. وكان للعديد من السنوات يبنى منازل قوية ويصنع أثاثًا جميلاً. أُعجب الناس بعمله وكان البعض يسافر من أماكن بعيدة فقط لرؤية الكراسى والطاولات الخشبية التى يقوم بصنعها.

بعد حياة مليئة بالعمل الشاق، شعر سامى بالتعب. قرر أنه قد حان الوقت للراحة والتوقف عن البناء. وقبل أن يتمكن من التقاعد جاء إليه ملك القرية بطلب فقال : «من فضلك ابنِ بيتًا أخير»، «سيكون هديتك الأخيرة للقرية».

وافق سامى، لكن لم يكن متحمسًا لهذا العمل. فقام باستخدام خشبًا ضعيفًا. ولم يفحص النوافذ والأبواب. فلم تكن النوافذ مناسبة وكانت الأبواب مائلة، لم يشبه المنزل عمله المتقن المعتاد.

Scanned with CamScanner

عندما انتهى سامى من بناء البيت، سلم سامى المفاتيح إلى الملك. ابتسم الملك بلطف وقال : «هذا البيت لك يا سامى. إنه هدية لك تقديرًا لكل عملك الرائع على مر السنين».

وقف سامى مصدومًا. لقد أصبح عمله الردئ الآن منزله. واحمر وجهه خجلًا وندمًا. لقد بنى هذا البيت بإهمال - والآن سيضطر أن يعيش فيه.

منذ ذلك اليوم، قطع سامى على نفسه عهدًا بأن يبذل أفضل ما لديه دائمًا مهما شعر بالتعب أو الانشغال. أخذ يصلح البيت ببطء، لوحًا بعد لوح، حتى جعله قويًا وجميلًا مرة أخرى.

ومع كل مسمارًا كان يدقه، تذكر سامى من يكون حقًا.

The moral lesson of the story : الدرس المستفاد من القصة:

It's important to always do your best, even when no one is watching.

من المهم أن نبذل قصارى جهدنا، حتى عندما لا يكون أحدًا يشاهدنا.

III Pronunciation

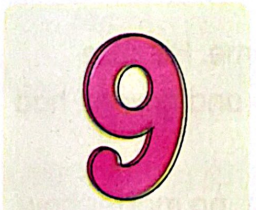
Long vowel sounds with silent "e".

أصوات الحروف المتحركة الممدودة مع حرف الـ"e" الصامت.

When a silent "-e" comes at the end of a word after one consonant, it makes the vowel before it a long vowel. This is like "rope" and "slide".

عندما يأتى حرف "e" الصامت (غير المنطوق) فى نهاية الكلمة ويكون بعد حرف ساكن واحد فإنها تجعل الحرف المتحرك قبلها ينطق بصوته الممدود مثل كلمة "slide" و "rope".

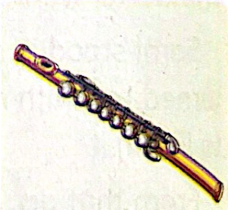
• Read and learn. اقرأ وتعلم.



nine رقم ٩

gate بوابة

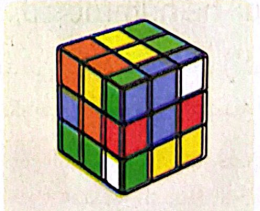
stone حجر



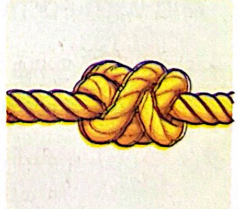
flute مزمار /آلة الناى

slide زحليقة

face وجه



cube مكعب



rope حبل

Scanned with CamScanner

General Exercises On Lesson 3

نصوص الاستماع والتقييمات في نهاية الكتاب

EL-MOASSER Exercises تدريبات المعاصر

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The carpenter carefully ..... the nail to fix the chair.
   a. remembered b. built c. hammered d. broke
2. Amany is the ..... girl in our team.
   a. younger b. youngest c. young d. young as
3. The word " ..... " means to be the right size.
   a. strong b. fit c. loud d. heavy
4. The carpenter ..... the door of my house.
   a. repaired b. slept c. planted d. heard
5. Who is the ..... boy ? - Ahmed.
   a. tallest b. as tall c. tall d. taller
6. The ..... subject is English.
   a. easy b. easier c. as easy d. easiest

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

gift - wood - carpenter - best - repaired

Sami was a skilled carpenter who lived in a quiet village. When the king asked him to build one last house, Sami did poor work and used weak [1] ..... . Later, he knew the house was a [2] ..... for him. Sami felt sorry. He promised to always do his [3] ..... , no matter how tired or busy he felt. He slowly [4] ..... the house.

3 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

A carpenter

Guiding elements :

- wood
- furniture
- nails

.....

.....

.....

.....

Scanned with CamScanner

SB, AB & Previous Exams

تدريبات كتاب الطالب والتقييمات والاختبارات السابقة

1 AB Read the text and answer the questions:

Seleem was famous for building strong, beautiful houses. After many years, he wanted to rest. But the village king had one last request: "Please build one more house". Seleem agreed, but he didn't do his best. He used weak wood and didn't check the doors or windows. When it was finished, the king smiled and gave him the house as a gift. Seleem was surprised. He had built it without care-and now he had to live in it.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Seleem was famous for building ..... houses.
   a. tall b. strong c. old d. glass
2. The king gave him the house as a ..... .
   a. prize b. gift c. room d. job

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Why did Seleem build the house without care ? .....
4. What did the king give Seleem ? .....
5. Was Seleem wrong or right ? .....

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. AB She watched the ..... **(big)** show. [الجيزة ـ الهرم ٢٠٢٦]
2. AB My sister is the ..... **(happy)** one in my family.
3. She has ..... **(that)** shortest hair in the class. [الاسكندرية ـ برج العرب ٢٠٢٦]
4. AB It is the ..... **(nice)** toy in the shop. [كفر الشيخ ـ الرياض ٢٠٢٦]

Rewind

نشط ذاكرتك وأكمل الرحلة

Language

يلا نرجع بسرعة نفتكر القواعد اللغوية **فى الوحدات السابقة**

1 The Present Simple Tense

ex. : She **brushes** her teeth every day.
- **Does** he **take** the bus to school ?

2 Comparative adjectives

ex. : Cats are **safer than** lions.

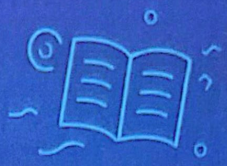
3 Prepositions of place

ex. : The cat is **in** the box. - The cat is **on** the box.

Scanned with CamScanner

LESSONS 4&5

- Writing
- Think and Create



I Vocabulary

Key vocabulary

المفردات اللغوية الأساسية موضع الامتحان [كما وردت فى كتاب الطالب]

fire station	محطة إطفاء	water hoses	خراطيم المياه	alarm	جهاز إنذار
thick	سميك	protective	واقى	firefighter	رجل إطفاء
stripes	خطوط [عريضة]	equipment	معدات		

Extra vocabulary

المفردات اللغوية المساعدة فى التعامل مع الورقة الامتحانية

heavy	ثقيل	lives	الحيوات [جمع حياة]	hero	بطل
truck	شاحنة	tools	أدوات	local	محلى
ladder	سلم/ درج متنقل	origami	فن تشكيل الورق		
oxygen tank	أسطوانة الأكسجين	art	فن		

• Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Irregular

Present		Past
fight	يقاتل / يصارع	fought
keep	يحفظ	kept
ring	يدق / يرن	rang
put on	يرتدى	put on

• Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

- in danger — فى خطر
- make a difference — يحدث فارق
- fight fire — يتصدى للنيران
- keep ..... ready — يجهز .....

Main points on listening and reading texts نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع و القراءة

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Heroes who fight fires	work – fire station	Omar works at a local fire station. يعمل عمر فى محطة إطفاء محلية.
	thick – uniform	Omar wears a thick protective uniform. يرتدى عمر زى واقى سميك.

Did you know ?

Origami is the Japanese art of paper folding. We can create amazing things with just paper.

هو فن ياباني متعلق بطى الورق. حيث نستطيع صنع أشياء رائعة باستخدام الورق فقط.

Scanned with CamScanner

	equipment – truck	He checks his equipment and keeps the big red fire truck ready. يفحص معداته ويبقى شاحنة الإطفاء الحمراء الكبيرة جاهزة.
	tools – ladders	Omar uses special tools like water hoses, ladders, and oxygen tanks. يستخدم عمر أدوات خاصة مثل خراطيم المياه و السلالم وأسطوانات الأكسجين.
	make a difference	Omar likes helping others and making a difference. يحب عمر مساعدة الآخرين و إحداث فرق.

Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

- **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

El-Moasser Exercises تدريبات المعاصر

1. The firefighter wears a thick ..... uniform to keep him safe.
   a. protective b. colorful c. bright d. soft
2. He became a ..... because he saved people.
   a. photo b. hero c. danger d. community
3. The zebra has ..... on its coat.
   a. spots b. colors c. stripes d. circles
4. The ..... rings at 7 o'clock in the morning.
   a. alarm b. station c. rope d. hose
5. Students study hard to get ..... for the exams.
   a. nervous b. ill c. ready d. tired

SB, AB & Previous Exams تدريبات كتاب الطالب والتقييمات والاختبارات السابقة

6. SB He likes helping others and making a ..... .
   a. station b. mistake c. fire d. difference
7. AB The ..... works at the fire station. [الفيوم - سنورس ٢٠٢٦]
   a. police officer b. doctor c. mechanic d. firefighter
8. People are in ..... when there's a fire. [المنيا - ملوى ٢٠٢٦]
   a. safety b. danger c. rest d. break
9. Firefighters use special ..... like water hoses to fight fires.
   a. tools b. clothes
   c. places d. gifts [المنوفية - تلا ٢٠٢٦]

Scanned with CamScanner

II Listening and Reading

• **Look, read and learn.** انظر، اقرأ وتعلم.

Non-fiction (real - life) story
Heroes Who Fight Fires
قصة واقعية : أبطال يتصدون للحرائق

My **neighbor**[1], Omar, is a **firefighter**[2] at our local **fire station**[3]. He wears a thick **protective**[4] uniform with bright yellow **stripes**[5] and a heavy helmet to keep him safe. Every day at the station, he checks his **equipment**[6] and keeps the big red fire truck ready. He also makes sure everything is clean and in the right place. When the alarm rings, he quickly puts on his equipment and rides the truck with his team to help people in **danger**[7]. He uses special tools like **water hoses**[8], ladders, and oxygen tanks to fight fires and save people. Omar says the part he likes most about his job is saving lives and **protecting**[9] our community. The work is dangerous, but he's **proud**[10] to be a firefighter because he likes helping others and making a difference.

[1] جار
[2] رجل مطافى
[3] محطة الإطفاء
[4] وقائى
[5] خطوط (عريضة)
[6] أدوات / معدات
[7] خطر
[8] خراطيم المياه
[9] حماية
[10] فخور

يعمل جارى عمر كرجل إطفاء فى محطة الإطفاء المحلية. فهو يرتدى زيًا واقيًا سميكًا بخطوط صفراء زاهية اللون وخوذة ثقيلة لحمايته. فكل يوم فى محطة الإطفاء، يقوم بفحص معداته ويجهز شاحنة الإطفاء الكبيرة ذات اللون الأحمر. يتأكد عمر أيضًا من أن كل شىء نظيف وفى مكانه الصحيح. عندما يرن جرس الإنذار ، يرتدى عمر معداته بسرعة ويركب الشاحنة مع فريقة لمساعدة الناس المعرضين للخطر . فهو يستخدم أدوات خاصة مثل خراطيم المياه والسلالم وأسطوانات الأكسجين لمكافحة الحرائق وإنقاذ الناس. يقول عمر أن الجزء الأكثر تفضيلًا لديه فى عمله هو إنقاذ الأرواح وحماية مجتمعنا. فهذا العمل يعتبر خطير جداً ، لكنه فخور أن يكون رجل إطفاء لأنه يحب مساعدة الآخرين وإحداث فارقًا.

Scanned with CamScanner

للمزيد من إتقان المهارات اللغوية كراسة المعاصر للمهارات اللغوية في نهاية الكتاب

III Writing Skill

Writing a non-fiction text كتابة نص واقعى

When you write a non-fiction text, ask yourself :
عند كتابة نص واقعى، اسأل نفسك :

- Is the information true ?
  هل المعلومات المستخدمة صحيحة ؟
- Did I make anything up ?
  هل قمت بتأليف شيئًا ما ؟

Non-fiction writing should include
يجب أن تشتمل الكتابة الواقعية على :

1. **An introductory sentence** جملة مقدمة
   "My neighbor, Omar, is a firefighter at our local fire station".
2. **Details that are all true** تفاصيل صحيحة
   "He wears a thick protective uniform with bright yellow stripes."
3. **Adjectives** صفات
   "thick, special tools, big red fire truck."
4. **A closing sentence** جملة خاتمة
   "The work is dangerous, but he's proud to be a firefighter."

Scanned with CamScanner

General Exercises On Lessons 4 & 5

نصوص الاستماع والتقييمات في نهاية الكتاب

EL-MOASSER Exercises تدريبات المعاصر

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The ..... helps firefighters reach high places.
   a. truck b. tank c. helmet d. ladder
2. A firefighter carries the ..... tools.
   a. heavy b. heavier c. heaviest d. heavy as
3. This is the ..... mountain in Egypt.
   a. highest b. higher c. the highest d. high
4. A ..... fights fires.
   a. nurse b. police officer c. carpenter d. firefighter
5. My grandpa uses a long ..... to water his garden.
   a. hall b. hose c. house d. hole
6. What is the ..... subject ?
   a. easy b. easiest c. as easy d. easier

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. Khan Al-Khalili is the ..... **(busy)** market.
2. This is the ..... **(nice)** puppet show.
3. This is the ..... **(big)** box in the room.
4. The police officer is the ..... **(faster)** at catching thieves.

3 Punctuate the following.

1. how does she help people

.....

2. he is a firefighter at a local fire station

.....

4 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below.

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Firefighters

Guiding words :

- save
- fires
- brave

.....

.....

.....

.....

Scanned with CamScanner

General Exercises On Lessons 4 & 5

نصوص الاستماع والتقييمات في نهاية الكتاب

SB, AB & Previous Exams

تدريبات كتاب الطالب والتقييمات والاختبارات السابقة

1 AB Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

protective - alarm - truck - danger - helmet

Omar works at a fire station. Every morning, he checks the fire [1] ..... and his equipment. He wears a [2] ..... and a thick [3] ..... uniform. When the [4] ..... rings, he moves quickly to help people in danger.

2 SB Read the text and answer the questions:

Omar is a firefighter. He wears a blue uniform and a helmet to stay safe. Every day, he checks his equipment and keeps the fire truck ready. When people need help, Omar and his team quickly drive to help them. He uses a long water hose to stop fires. He also has a special ladder for tall buildings. He saves people and pets from fire. He loves his job because he likes saving people and animals.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The main idea of the text is about a ..... .
   a. nurse b. doctor c. firefighter d. teacher
2. Omar uses a long water ..... to stop fires.
   a. truck b. ladder c. helmet d. hose

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What does Omar do when people need help ? .....
4. Why does Omar love his job ? .....
5. Summarize the text in one sentence. .....

Rewind

نشط ذاكرتك وأكمل الرحلة

Vocabulary

بلا نرجع بسرعة نفتكر المفردات اللغوية في الوحدات السابقة.

smoke	دخان	culture	ثقافة	footprints	آثار أقدام
do exercises	يتدرب / يتمرن	air pollution	تلوث الهواء	Cairo Tower	برج القاهرة
greedy	جشع / طمع	trunk	خرطوم الفيل	post office	مكتب البريد
community park	حديقة مجتمعية	forest officer	حارس الغابة	monastery	دير

Scanned with CamScanner

Accumulative Dictation

إملاء تراكمى على الدروس

اختبار لقياس وتقييم مدى استيعاب الطالب للمفردات اللغوية

LESSON 3

.....	اناث	crooked	.....
.....	نجار	skilled	.....
.....	صدمة	regret	.....

LESSONS 4&5

.....	سميك	stripes	.....
.....	خراطيم المياه	equipment	.....
.....	سلم / درج متنقل	alarm	.....

LESSONS 3, 4 & 5

تدريب تراكمى على المفردات اللغوية للدروس الثالث والرابع والخامس

1. Complete the following sentences using the words from the box.

Skilled - fire stations - protective - promise

1. If you ..... to do something, it means that you will definitely do it.
2. ..... means very good at doing something.
3. Firefighters work at..... .
4. The ..... gloves keep the hands safe.

2. Read and write.

• Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Present		Past
.....	يعجب بـ	admired
retire	يتقاعد عن العمل	.....
.....	يدق	hammered
agree	يقبل	.....

Present		Past
fight	يقاتل / يصارع	.....
.....	يحفظ	kept
ring	يدق / يرن	.....
.....	يرتدى	put on

Scanned with CamScanner

Skills 1 Reading Comprehension

Determine the meaning of words and phrases

تختبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مدى إتقانك لمهارة القراءة.

التحدى قد تجد صعوبة فى تحديد معنى مفردة لغوية أو عبارة فى نص.

مفتاح الحل يعتمد هذا السؤال على إتقانك للمفردات اللغوية وإذا واجهتك صعوبة فى تحديد معنى الكلمة، اقرأ النص جيدًا ثم خمن المعنى.

1 Learn تعلم كيفية الإجابة.

Read and learn how to answer :

Amr is a wildlife photographer. He has an **interesting** job! He takes pictures of wild animals. "I find the biggest lions and the smallest birds," he says. "I take great photos in **faraway** places. Sometimes, I wait a long time to get the best picture !"

faraway بعيد / ناءٍ interesting ممتع

• The underlined word "**interesting**" is the opposite of " ..... ".

a. amazing b. boring

c. good d. wonderful

شرح الحل

تقرأ الفقرة جيدا لتحديد معانى الكلمات المستهدفة.

• The underlined word "**faraway**" is the opposite of " ..... ".

a. near b. heavy c. thick d. strong

2 Master اتقن طريقة حل السؤال (متبعًا الخطوة الأولى.)

Read and answer the questions :

Sami was a skilled carpenter who lived in a quiet village. When the king asked him to make one more house, Sami did poor work and used **weak** wood. Later, he knew the house was a **gift** for him. Sami felt regret. He promised to always give his best in his job, no matter how tired or busy he felt.

• The underlined word "**weak**" is the opposite of " ..... ".

a. poor b. strong c. rich d. sick

• The underlined word "**gift**" has the same meaning as " ..... ".

a. story b. job c. lesson d. present

Scanned with CamScanner

2 Review, Practice & Master
for Correction Notes

الهدف من هذا الجزء
- التأكيد على فهم الطالب للقواعد اللغوية.
- اكتساب الطالب مهارة التعامل مع سؤال تصحيح الخطأ.

Review راجع القاعدة وتأكد من فهمك

Superlative adjectives صفات التفضيل

عند المقارنة بين أكثر من اثنين (واحد ومجموعة) نضع the قبل الصفة القصيرة ونضيف (est) :

• ... the + short adjective + est ...

Ex. : tall → the tallest
nice → the nicest
big → the biggest
happy → the happiest

Practice تدرب على كيفية التعامل مع السؤال

Sentence	Correction	Reason
1 This tree is ..... (tall) in our garden.	the tallest	عند التفضيل نضيف للصفة القصيرة (est) وقبلها (the)
2 Omar is ..... (nicest) friend I have.	the nicest	عند التفضيل نضع قبل الصفة القصيرة (the) ونضيف لها (est)
3 Who is the ..... (fast) in the class?	fastest	عند التفضيل نضيف للصفة القصيرة (est)

Master أتقن طريقة حل السؤال

Write the reason. معرفة الطالب لسبب الإجابة يؤكد استيعابه للقاعدة المطلوبة.

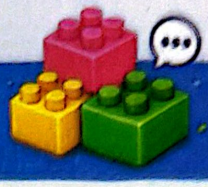
1 Noha is the ..... (happy) girl.	happiest	.....
2 The giraffes are ..... (tall) animals.	the tallest	.....
3 August is the ..... (hot) month of the year.	hottest	.....
4 The elephant is the ..... (bigger) animal.	biggest	.....

Write the correction. اكتب التصحيح.

1 I have the ..... (heavy) bag.	.....	تستخدم صيغة التفضيل لوجود (the)
2 The library is the ..... (quiet) place to study in.	.....	تستخدم صيغة التفضيل لوجود (the)
3 The cheetah is ..... (then) fastest animal.	.....	في صيغة التفضيل يضاف قبل الصفة القصيرة (the)
4 My grandpa is the ..... (wise) person I know.	.....	صيغة تفضيل لوجود (the)

Scanned with CamScanner

3 Sentence Building



الهدف من هذا الجزء تعلم كيف تكون وترتب جمل وأسئلة.

١ الجملة الخبرية

1. Subject Detective

مين صاحب الفعل؟

ابحث عن الفاعل

أمثلة من الجمل:

1. Amr
   فاعل الجملة الأولى
2. Noha
   فاعل الجملة الخامسة

الفاعل هو الشخص أو الشيء الذي يقوم بالفعل.

1. is - Amr - photographer - a wildlife.
2. takes - Amir - photos - the greatest.
3. built - The carpenter - houses - strong.
4. protects - A police officer - people.
5. mentor - Noha - the - is - kindest.
6. saves - from - A firefighter - people - fires.

	١ فاعل	٢ فعل	٣ باقي الجملة.
1.			a wildlife photographer.
2.	Amir		
3.			
4.			
5.			
6.		saves	

2. Verb Hunter

بيعمل إيه؟

إبحث عن الفعل

أمثلة من الجمل:

1. takes
   فعل الجملة الثانية
2. protects
   فعل الجملة الرابعة

الفعل هو الحركة أو الحدث في الجملة.

٢ الجملة الاستفهامية

3. Helper Team

مين بيساعدنا؟

الأفعال المساعدة

Do / Did
تستخدم مع:
I, you, we, they

Does / Did
he, she, it

الأفعال المساعدة تأتي قبل الفاعل في السؤال.

1. Ali - use - at work - What things - does?
2. does - What - wear - a doctor?
3. want - What - you - do - be - to?
4. did - Why - Sami - working - stop?
5. a nurse - What - does - do?

	١ كلمة استفهام	٢ فعل مساعد	٣ فاعل	٤ فعل	٥ باقي السؤال؟
1.	What things				
2.				wear ?	
3.					
4.					
5.		does			

4. The Wh-Team

نسأل ازاى؟

أدوات الاستفهام

- Why [لماذا]: للسؤال عن السبب.
- What [ما/ماذا]: للسؤال عن شيء.

أداة الاستفهام تأتي دائمًا في بداية السؤال.

Scanned with CamScanner

4 Build Your Topic

اكتب موضوعك خطوة بخطوة

1. Word Bank

قُم بقراءة المفردات اللغوية وتعلم كيفية استخدامها فى جُمل.

▸ **Use the words in the table to make sentences.**

subject	verb	rest of the sentence
Doctors	work	in hospitals.
They	help	sick people.
They	wear	white coats.
Firefighters	work	at a fire station.
They	wear	a blue uniform.
They	stop	fires.

2. Sentence Machine

قُم بترتيب الجُمل التالية لتكون جُمل مناسبة عند كتابة فقرات إنشائية.

▸ **Put the words in the correct order to form sentences.**

1. work - **Doctors** - hospitals - in.
2. people - help - **They** - sick.
3. wear - coats - **They** - white.
4. work - **Firefighters** - station - at a fire.
5. uniform - **They** - a blue - wear.
6. stop - fires - **They**.

3. Make your own paragraph

قُم بقراءة الجُمل [٦] السابقة ثم تصنيفها على حسب كل فقرة إنشائية مطلوب كتابتها من الفقرات التالية.

Write a paragraph about doctors.

Write a paragraph about firefighters.

Scanned with CamScanner

5 Important Topics

تعتبر مهارة الكتابة من المهارات الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع لذا يجب استخدام جمل وأفكار مترابطة. قم بقراءة هذه الجمل لتساعدك على التعامل مع مهارة الكتابة [٢٢ جملة].

1 Different jobs

All jobs are important[1]. Doctors are very important for all of us[2]. They help sick people and check their health[3]. Engineers design new buildings[4]. Nurses also play an important role[5]. They help the doctors and care for the patients[6]. Firefighters stop fires and save people[7].

2 Amazing jobs

There are many special jobs around us[8]. A mentor does very kind and helpful work[9]. A mentor helps shy students become brave[10]. A mentor feels so nice when students do well[11]. A voice-over actor makes voices for cartoons[12]. A voice-over actor can make high voices and low voices[13].

3 A wildlife photographer

A wildlife photographer takes pictures of wild animals in nature[14]. He finds the biggest animals and the smallest birds[15]. He takes great photos in faraway places[16]. He waits a very long time to get the best picture[17]!

4 Heroes who fight fires

A firefighter works at a fire station[18]. He wears a thick protective uniform[19]. He checks his equipment and keeps the big red fire truck ready[20]. When the alarm rings, he quickly puts on his equipment and rides the truck with his team to help people in danger[21]. He uses special tools like water hoses, ladders, and oxygen tanks to fight fires and save people[22].

From Sentences to Topics

- A Start with a capital letter.
- Use the correct tense.
- Put the words in the correct order.
- End with a full stop.

Scanned with CamScanner

Review through the Exam on Unit 5

مراجعة الوحدة من خلال اختبارات المحافظات وكتاب الطالب والتقييمات

15 Vocabulary

أهم 15 مفردة لغوية وردت فى كتاب الطالب والتقييمات والمحافظات [التى تمكن الطالب من اجتياز أى امتحان].

doctor	طبيب	mentor	مرشد تعليمى	furniture	أثاث
engineer	مهندس	wildlife photographer	مصور الحياة البرية	skilled	ماهر / ذو مهارة
firefighter	رجل اطفاء			promise	يوعد / يعد
police officer	ضابط شرطة	voice-over actor	مؤدى صوتى	protective	واقى
				fire station	محطة اطفاء
helmet	خوذة	puppet	دُمية	water hoses	خراطيم المياه

15 Vocabulary through the Exam

جمل مختارة على المفردات اللغوية من الأسئلة الأكثر شيوعاً فى كتاب الطالب والتقييمات والاختبارات السابقة.
ذاكرها وهتقابلها كثير فى الامتحان.

1. Doctors[1] check the health of sick people.
2. Ali is an engineer[2] . He builds new buildings.
3. A firefighter[3] stops fires and saves people.
4. A police officer[4] wears a white uniform and a cap.
5. I wear a helmet[5] to protect my head.
6. A mentor[6] helps young students learn and grow.
7. He is a wildlife photographer[7] who loves taking pictures.
8. Voice-over actors[8] often make cartoons sound more real.
9. She works with puppets[9]. She uses puppets to tell stories.
10. Beds, chairs, and tables are furniture[10].
11. Skilled[11] means very good at doing something.
12. If you promise[12] to do something, it means that you will definitely do it.
13. The firefighter wears a thick protective[13] uniform to keep him safe.
14. The firefighter works at the fire station[14].
15. Firefighters use special tools like water hoses[15] to fight fires.

[1] كتاب الطالب	[2] كتاب التقييمات	[3] كتاب التقييمات	[4] كتاب التقييمات	[5] القاهرة - عابدين
[6] الغربية - قطور	[7] كفر الشيخ - دسوق	[8] القليوبية - بنها	[9] دمياط - الروضة	[10] القاهرة - المرج
[11] كتاب الطالب	[12] الشرقية - الصالحية	[13] بورسعيد - بورفؤاد	[14] الجيزة - اطفيح	[15] المنوفية - تلا

Scanned with CamScanner

Language

القواعد اللغوية الهامة التى وردت فى كتاب الطالب والتقييمات والمحافظات
(التى تمكن الطالب من اجتياز أى امتحان)

Superlatives adjectives : صفات التفضيل :

We use superlative adjectives to show the greatest degree of something.
- نستخدم صفات التفضيل لنوضح أعلى درجة من صفة شئ ما.

Short adj. : الصفات القصيرة → **(the + short adj. صفة قصيرة + est)**

تتحول الصفات القصيرة إلى صيغة التفضيل بإضافة (-est) للصفة القصيرة ونضع قبلها (the) كالتالى :

ex. - fast → the fastest

Language through the Exam

جمل مختارة على القواعد اللغوية من الأسئلة الأكثر شيوعاً فى كتاب الطالب والتقييمات والاختبارات السابقة.
ذاكرها وهتقابلها كثير فى الامتحان.

1. My grandpa is the wisest person I know.
2. The elephant is the biggest animal.
3. Omar is the bravest firefighter in the town.
4. She is the shortest girl in the class.
5. The cheetah is the fastest animal.

[كتاب الطالب / كتاب التقييمات / الاسكندرية - العامرية / الجيزة - الدقى / بنى سويف - ناصر]

Reading & Writing through the Exam

الموضوعات الأكثر شيوعًا فى كتاب الطالب والتقييمات والاختبارات السابقة. ذاكرها وهتقابلها كثير فى الامتحان.

1. Read and write.

Firefighters

Firefighters work at **fire stations**. They wear a **thick protective** uniform. They help people in danger. They fight **fires** and save people.

Vocabulary

استخرج المعنى من النص واكتبه :

سميك .....
حريق .....
واقى .....
محطة إطفاء .....
رجال المطافى .....

2. Reorder and write.

1. fight - Firefighters - fires.
.....
2. work - fire - Firefighters - at - stations.
.....
3. wear - protective - They - a thick - uniform.
.....

3. Write about

- Firefighters
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

UNIT 5

Scanned with CamScanner

Sample Test 9 On Unit 5

نصوص الاستماع والتقييمات في نهاية الكتاب

اختبار المعاصر

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False. استمع الى معلمك واكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ.

1. Ali wants to be a wildlife photographer. [ ]
2. Wildlife photographers take pictures of wild places. [ ]
3. Wildlife photographers can take great snacks in faraway places. [ ]
4. They wait a long time to get the best picture. [ ]

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Firefighters use oxygen ..... in dangerous situations.
   a. helmets b. tanks c. uniforms d. trucks
2. Maged is the ..... player in our team.
   a. fast b. faster c. fastest d. faster than
3. ..... means made of wood.
   a. Wooden b. Iron c. Silver d. Golden
4. A voice-over actor makes ..... for cartoons.
   a. homes b. shapes c. colors d. voices
5. Dalia is the ..... friend I have.
   a. nice b. nicer c. as nice d. nicest
6. This question is the ..... one in the exam.
   a. harder b. hardest c. hard d. hard as

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

brave - wild - station - protect - uniform

I am a police officer. I work in a police (1) ..... .I wear a white (2) ..... and a cap. I work hard to (3) ..... the people in the community. I like my job. It's a dangerous job, but I love helping people. A police officer needs to be (4) ..... and helpful.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

A carpenter is a skilled worker. He works in a workshop. He has a lot of tools to use. He uses wood to make furniture and houses. He knows how to choose good wood to make strong things. A carpenter's job is very useful in the community.

Scanned with CamScanner

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A carpenter has a lot of ..... to use.

a. tools b. colors c. plants d. subjects

2. A carpenter is a ..... worker.

a. slow b. skilled c. brave d. lazy

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Where does a carpenter work?

.....

4. Summarize the text in one sentence.

.....

5. What does the carpenter use to make furniture ?

.....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. Nada's house is the ..... **(near)** house to me.
2. Basketball players are the ..... **(tall)** in the club.
3. She is the ..... **(braver)** girl in her class.
4. Sami built the ..... **(weak)** house.

6 Punctuate the following.

1. why is your job important

.....

2. she works with puppets

.....

7 Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Important jobs

Guiding words :

- sick people
- design
- patients

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Scanned with CamScanner

Sample Test 10 On Unit 5

نصوص الاستماع والتقييمات في نهاية الكتاب

اختبار مجمع من كتاب الطالب والتقييمات والاختبارات السابقة

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False.

1. A mentor does very kind and helpful work. [ ]
2. A mentor feels so sad when students do well. [ ]
3. A voice-over actor makes songs for cartoons. [ ]
4. A voice-over actor can make high voices and low voices. [ ]

[القليوبية ـ طوخ ـ ٢٠٢٦]

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. AB Sara is a doctor. She helps ..... people and checks their health.
   a. poor b. sick c. busy d. old
2. AB Ali is an engineer. He ..... new buildings.
   a. feeds b. cleans c. designs d. paints
3. SB A/An ..... works in a school and teaches lessons.
   a. engineer b. nurse c. teacher d. firefighter
4. SB I think the teacher's job is ..... job.
   a. the nicest b. nicest c. nicer d. nice
5. AB The photographer took the ..... photos at the party.
   a. great b. great as c. greater d. greatest
6. AB The fire station is the ..... building in our area.
   a. big b. bigger c. biggest d. big as

3 AB Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

animals - monkeys - wildlife - market - take

My name is Hany. I'm a (1) ..... photographer. I (2) ..... pictures of (3) ....., birds and plants in nature. I have lots of pictures. My favorite animals are (4) ..... . They climb trees and they are funny .

4 AB Read the text and answer the questions.

Sara is a voice-over actor. She likes her job very much. She makes voices for cartoons. She can make high and low voices. Also she can talk very fast or very slow. She can make little voices for small characters and loud voices for large ones. I want to be like Sara in the future.

Scanned with CamScanner

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Sara is a/an ..... .

a. nurse b. voice-over actor c. engineer d. vet

2. Sara makes voices for ..... .

a. books b. stories c. cartoons d. cars

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What is Sara's job ?

.....

4. Does Sara like her job ?

.....

5. What do you want to be in the future ?

.....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. AB The firefighter is the ..... **(brave)** hero in our town.
2. AB The engineer designed the ..... **(strong)** bridge in the city.
3. AB The giraffe is the ..... **(tall)** animal in the zoo.
4. Hany is the ..... **(kind)** one in the class. [القاهرة - روض الفرج ٢٠٢٦]

6 Punctuate the following.

1. AB why does Sama like her job

.....

2. AB sami repaired the house board by board

.....

7 AB Write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences using the words below.

[بنى سويف - بنى سويف ٢٠٢٦]

Wildlife photographers مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Guiding words :

• camera • desert • lion

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Scanned with CamScanner

1 Listen and choose the correct answer.

1. A carpenter works in a ..... .
   a. school b. hospital c. workshop d. farm
2. He uses wood to make ..... .
   a. clothes b. furniture c. food d. plants
3. A carpenter's job is very ..... in the community.
   a. easy b. tasty c. harmful d. useful

2 Read and complete the dialog.

doctor - grow - coats - patients

Amir : What do you want to be when you [1] ..... up?
Adel : I want to be a [2] ..... .
Amir : What do doctors do ?
Adel : They help [3] ..... .
Amir : What do doctors wear ?
Adel : They wear white [4] ..... .

3 Choose the correct answer.

1. He wears a ..... on his head to keep him safe.
   a. jacket b. tank c. hose d. helmet
2. ..... help doctors and patients.
   a. Mentors b. Teachers c. Nurses d. Actors
3. The living room is the ..... room in our house.
   a. biggest b. bigger c. big as d. big
4. My father is the ..... person in our family.
   a. taller b. tallest c. tall as d. tall

4 Read and correct the underlined mistakes.

1. She has **that** shortest hair in the class. [.....]
2. Farah is the **young** girl in the team. [.....]
3. What is the **cold** country in the world? [.....]
4. She bought the **nice** dress in the shop. [.....]

5 Read the following passage, then answer the questions.

Mariam is 25 years old. She works as a mentor. She does very kind and helpful work! She helps young students learn and grow. She helps shy students become brave. Mariam feels very happy when her students get good marks. She spends a lot of time searching for new ideas to help students do well.

A. Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1. Mariam is 35 years old. [ ]
2. Mariam feels sad when her students get good marks. [ ]

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

3. This text is about the job of a/an ..... .
   a. firefighter b. actor
   c. mentor d. photographer
4. Mariam spends much time searching for new ..... .
   a. students b. places c. ideas d. jobs
5. Mariam helps shy students become ..... .
   a. scared b. brave c. weak d. poor

6 Write a short paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences on.

Voice-over actors

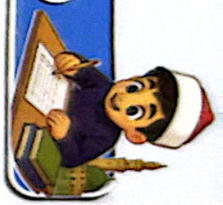
Guiding words : مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

• voice • low • high • cartoons

.....
.....
.....

Sample Test 1 for Al-Azhar students On Unit 5

اختبار لطلاب الأزهر الشريف



نصوص الاستماع والتقييمات في نهاية الكتاب

Scanned with CamScanner

1 Listen and choose the correct answer.

1. ..... help sick people and check their health.
   a. Engineers b. Doctors c. Teachers d. Chefs
2. ..... design new buildings.
   a. Vets b. Teachers c. Engineers d. Doctors
3. Firefighters stop fires and ..... people.
   a. save b. damage c. fight d. hurt

2 Read and complete the dialog.

uniform - firefighter - fires - wear

Sara : What does your father do, Nada ?
Nada : My father is a (1) ..... .
Sara : What does he (2) ..... ?
Nada : He wears a blue (3) ..... .
Sara : Why is the job of a firefighter important ?
Nada : Because he stops (4) ..... and saves people.

3 Choose the correct answer.

1. My dad ..... a/an nail into the wall.
   a. promised b. hammered c. remembered d. retired
2. Omar is a ..... boy. He is very good at drawing pictures.
   a. skilled b. angry c. selfish d. scared
3. The lion is ..... fastest animal.
   a. then b. that c. the d. than
4. This is the ..... bridge I have ever seen.
   a. as long b. long c. longer d. longest

4 Read and correct the underlined mistakes.

1. The library is the **quiet** place in school. [.....]
2. Ali is the **fast** swimmer in the team. [.....]
3. My room is **than** warmest in winter. [.....]
4. Soha is the **young** student in the group. [.....]

5 Read the following passage, then answer the questions.

I'm Mazen. Yesterday was a strange day in my neighborhood. There was a fire in my neighbor's house. My dad called the fire station. The firefighters arrived quickly in their big red fire truck. They took ten minutes to stop the fire. They saved our lives. They are heroes.

A. Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1. Yesterday was a nice day in Mazen's neighborhood. ( )
2. The firefighters are heroes. ( )

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

3. Mazen's ..... called the fire station.
   a. dad b. brother c. cousin d. mom
4. The firefighters arrived ..... .
   a. angrily b. quickly c. happily d. slowly
5. They took ten minutes to stop the ..... .
   a. car b. noise c. fire d. fight

6 Write a short paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences on.

Mentors

Guiding words : مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

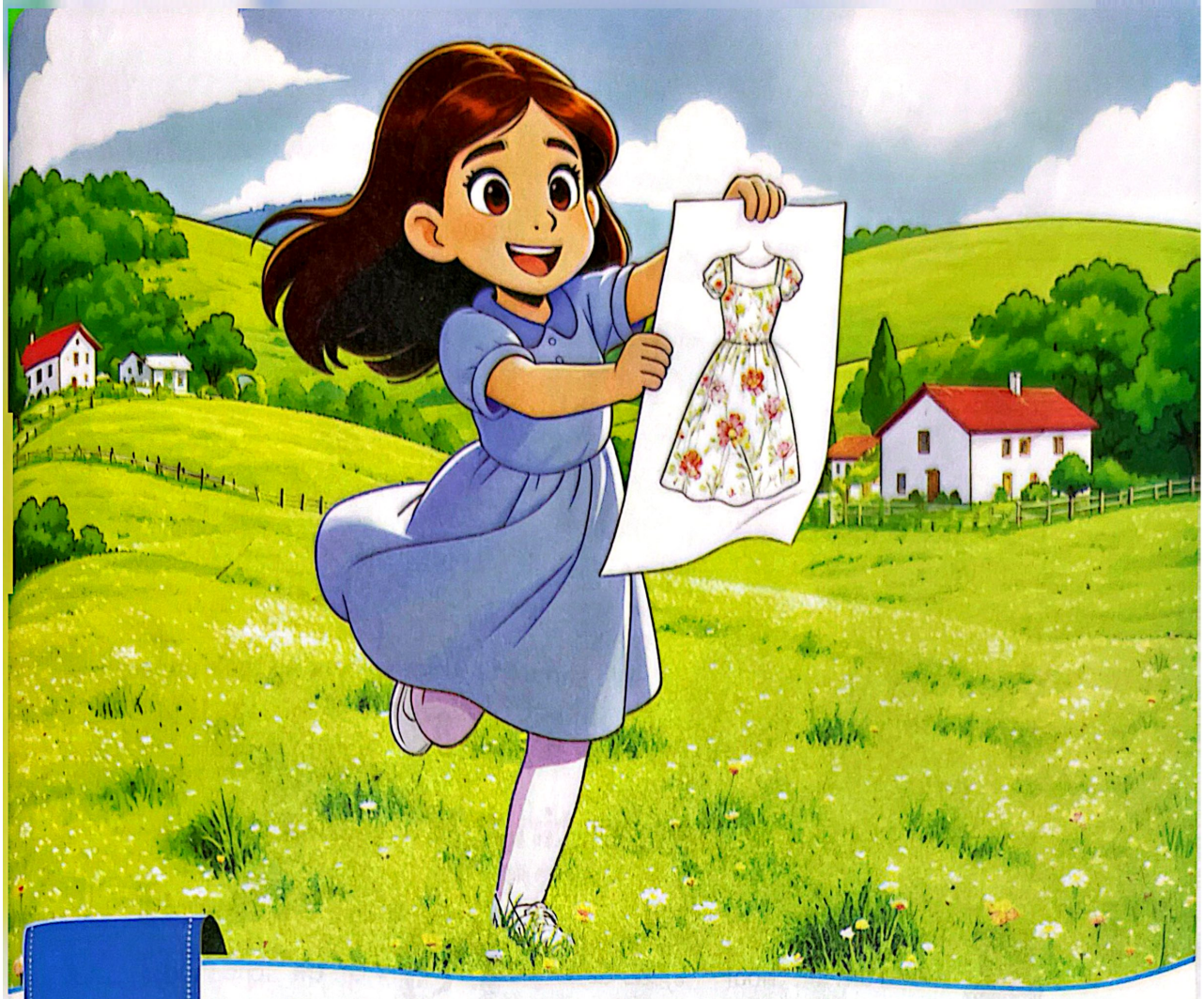
• work • learn • shy • brave

.....
.....
.....

Sample Test 2 for Al-Azhar students On Unit 5

اختبار لطلاب الأزهر الشريف

نهاية الكتاب



STORY

The Hundred Dresses

الفساتين المائة

By : "Eleanor Estes"

Learning Outcomes

Listening

- Understand the sequence of events in a narrated story

- فهم تسلسل الأحداث فى قصة

Reading

- Answer questions about the story setting, character and events
- Identify the elements of a story
- Answer critical questions based on the story's events

- الإجابة عن أسئلة متعلقة بمكان وزمان القصة والشخصيات والأحداث
- تحديد عناصر القصة
- الإجابة عن أسئلة التفكير النقدى المتعلقة بأحداث القصة

Speaking

- Express their favorite character in the story
- Discuss the moral lessons of a story

- التعبير عن الشخصية المفضلة فى القصة
- مناقشة الدروس المستفاد من القصة

Writing

- Write a letter based on the story's events

- كتابة رسالة (خطاب) بناءً على أحداث القصة

Scanned with CamScanner

Story Map خريطة القصة

The characters الشخصيات

Wanda

Peggy

Maddie

Miss Mason

The moral of the story

We shouldn't judge others by their appearance.
لا يجب أن نحكم على الأشخاص من مظهرهم.

The setting المكان و الزمان

Places الأماكن

- At a small school في مدرسة صغيرة
- In the playground في ملعب المدرسة

Time الوقت

- On the school day في يوم دراسي
- Every morning كل صباح

Story plot حبكة القصة

Beginning

- Wanda was a quiet girl who sat in the back of the classroom.
- Wanda always wore the same faded blue dress every day.
- The popular girls at school, Peggy and Maddie, annoyed Wanda every morning.

Middle

- One day, Miss Mason, the teacher, announced a drawing competition.
- Wanda drew and designed a hundred beautiful drawings of dresses of all colors.
- Wanda won the competition, but she wasn't there to receive her medal.

End

- Wanda was absent for several days.
- Wanda's dad sent a letter saying that Wanda's family moved to a big city.
- Peggy and Maddie felt terrible and sorry for their behavior.
- Peggy and Maddie sent a letter to Wanda to apologize.

Scanned with CamScanner

Picture Dictionary

القاموس المصور

قاموس المعاصر الناطق

dress
فستان

closet
خزانة [دولاب] ملابس

playground
ملعب

competition
مسابقة

announce
يعلن

drawings
رسومات

sign
توقيع / يوقع

letter
خطاب

winner فائز

medal ميدالية

laugh يضحك

Study these definitions. ادرس هذه التعريفات.

Word	Meaning	Definition
faded	باهت	light in color because it is old or used فاتح اللون لأنه قديم أو مستخدم
popular	محبوب / مشهور	known by many people مشهور من قبل الكثير من الناس
annoying	يزعج	making you feel unhappy or a little angry يجعلك تشعر بعدم السعادة أو بالغضب قليلاً
absent	غائب	not in a place ليس في المكان
notice	يلاحظ	to see or hear something أن ترى أو تسمع شيئاً ما
behavior	سلوك	the way someone acts طريقة تصرف شخص ما
expensive	غالي الثمن	costs a lot of money يكلف الكثير من المال
bullying	تنمر	hurting or scaring other people إيذاء أو تخويف الأشخاص الآخرين
apologize	يعتذر	to say "I'm sorry" when you do something wrong أن تقول "أنا آسف" عندما تفعل شيئاً خاطئاً

Scanned with CamScanner

1 The beginning
بداية القصة

Wanda talked about her dresses تحدثت Wanda عن فساتينها

In a small school, there was a girl named Wanda. She was a quiet[1] girl who sat in the back[2] of the classroom. Wanda always wore the same faded blue dress[3] every day. Despite[4] this, Wanda told everyone she had a hundred[5] beautiful dresses at home, all lined up[6] in her closet[7].

في مدرسة صغيرة، كانت هناك فتاة تُدعى (Wanda). كانت فتاة هادئة تجلس في آخر الفصل. كانت (Wanda) ترتدي دائمًا نفس الفستان الأزرق الباهت كل يوم. ومع ذلك، كانت (Wanda) تخبر الجميع أن لديها مائة من الفساتين الجميلة في المنزل، جميعها مصفوفة في خزانتها.

[1] هادئ [2] في الخلف [3] فستان [4] على الرغم من [5] مائة [6] يصطف [7] خزانة ملابس

Scanned with CamScanner

Annoying Wanda in the playground

مضايقة "Wanda" فى الملعب

The popular girls at school, especially Peggy and Maddie, annoyed[1] Wanda every morning. One day, while they were in the playground[2], Peggy said, "Hey, Wanda, tell us about your hundred dresses!" The other girls laughed. Maddie didn't like how they were annoying Wanda, but she stayed quiet[3]. Maddie was afraid of losing Peggy's friendship[4]. Soon, most of the girls were annoying Wanda and laughing[5] about her hundred dresses.

كانت الفتيات المحبوبات فى المدرسة، وخاصةً [Peggy] و [Maddie] يُزعجن [Wanda] كل صباح. فى أحد الأيام، بينما كنّ فى الملعب، قالت [Peggy]: "يا [Wanda]، أخبرينا عن فساتينكِ المائة!" ضحكت الفتيات الأخريات. لم تُعجب [Maddie] بإزعاجهن لـ [Wanda]، لكنها التزمت الصمت. كانت [Maddie] تخشى فقدان صداقة [Peggy]. وسرعان ما أصبحت معظم الفتيات يزعجن [Wanda] ويضحكن على فساتينها المائة.

[1] ضايق / ازعج [2] ملعب [3] هادئ / صامت [4] صداقة [5] يضحك

Scanned with CamScanner

2 The Middle
منتصف القصة

A drawing competition مسابقة رسم

One day, Miss Mason, the teacher, announced[1] that it was time for the annual[2] drawing competition[3]. Miss Mason said, "I will choose one boy and one girl as winners." When it was time to announce the winners, to everyone's surprise, the walls were covered with[4] a hundred beautiful drawings[5] of dresses of all colors and designs. Wanda drew and signed all the drawings. She won the competition, but she wasn't there to receive her medal[6].

في أحد الأيام، أعلنت المعلمة "Mason" عن موعد مسابقة الرسم السنوية. قائلة : "سأختار ولدًا واحداً وفتاة ليكونوا الفائزين." وعندما حان وقت إعلان الفائزين ، ولدهشة الجميع، غُطيت الجدران بمائة رسمة جميلة لفساتين من جميع الألوان والتصاميم. رسمت "Wanda" جميع الرسومات ووقعت عليها. فازت بالمسابقة، لكنها لم تحضر لتستلم ميداليتها.

[1] أعلنت | [2] سنوى | [3] مسابقة | [4] مغطى بـ | [5] رسومات | [6] ميدالية

Scanned with CamScanner

• Peggy and Maddie wrote to Wanda to apologize.

كتبت "Peggy" و "Maddie" إلى "Wanda" ليعتذروا.

Wanda was absent for several days, but no one noticed. Miss Mason read a letter[1] from Wanda's dad, saying that Wanda's family moved[2] to the big city, where they wouldn't face unkindness[3].

Peggy and Maddie felt terrible[4]. They realized that when Wanda talked about her hundred dresses, she meant those drawings, her dreams[5] on paper. Maddie said to Peggy, "We need to write to Wanda and apologize[6]."

They wrote her a letter, saying, "Wanda, your drawings are beautiful and amazing. It's very sad that you aren't here to receive your medal. We are sorry for our behavior and hope that you're happy at your new school."

غابت "Wanda" لعدة أيام، لكن لم يلاحظ أحد. قرأت الأستاذة "Mason" خطاب من والد"Wanda"، تفيد بأن عائلة "Wanda" انتقلت إلى المدينة الكبيرة، حيث لن يواجهوا أى قسوة.

شعرت "Peggy" و "Maddie" بالحزن. أدركتا أن "Wanda" عندما تحدثت عن فساتينها المائة، كانت تعنى تلك الرسومات - أحلامها المكتوبة على الورق. قالت "Maddie" لـ "Peggy" : "علينا أن نكتب إلى "Wanda" ونعتذر.

كتبتا لها خطاب قائلين: يا "Wanda"، رسوماتك جميلة ورائعة. من المحزن جداً أنكِ لستِ هنا لاستلام ميداليتك. نأسف لسلوكنا ونأمل أن تكونى سعيدة فى مدرستكِ الجديدة.

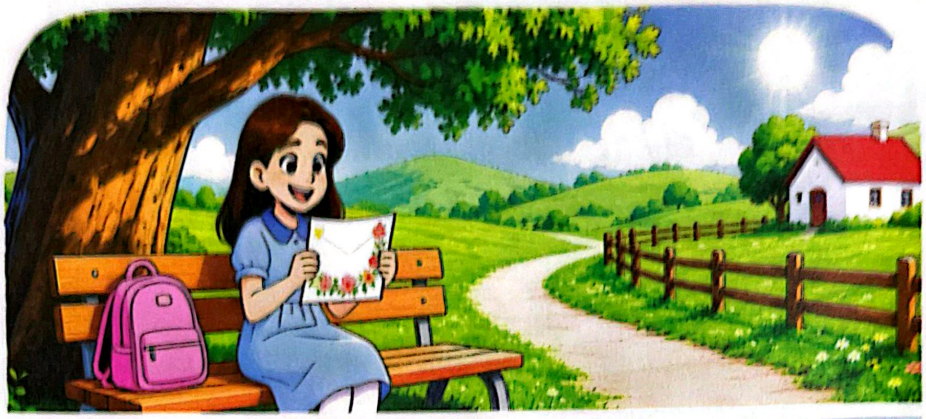
[1] خطاب [2] انتقل [3] قسوة [4] بالآسى [5] احلام [6] يعتذر

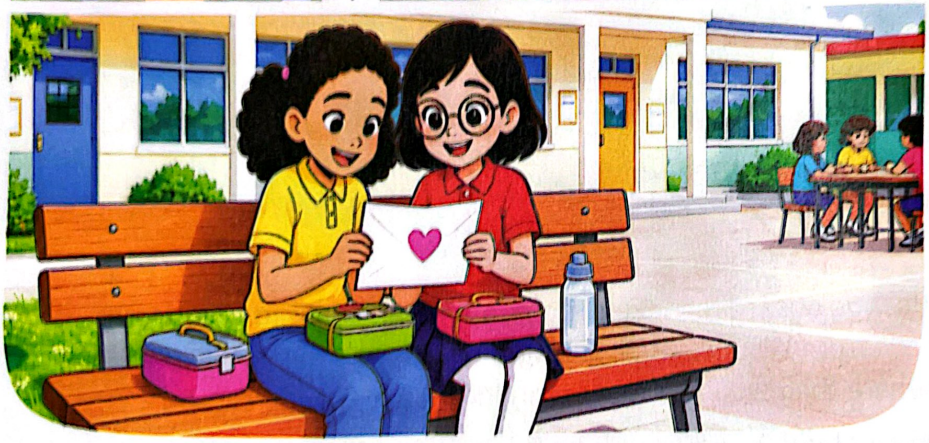
Scanned with CamScanner

3 The End
نهاية القصة

The experience changed Peggy and Maddie forever.

التجربة غيرت «Maddie» و «Peggy» للأبد.





Wanda received[1] the letter at her new school. She was happy when she learned that the letter was from Maddie and Peggy. Then, Wanda wrote back to them, saying, "Thank you for your letter. I'm happy at my new school, and I want you to keep[2] my drawings".

This experience[3] changed Peggy and Maddie forever. They learned that kindness[4] matters more than expensive[5] clothes. They promised[6] to always speak up if there was bullying[7].

استلمت «Wanda» الخطاب فى مدرستها الجديدة. فكانت سعيدة عندما علمت أن الخطاب من «Maddie» و«Peggy» . ثم كتبت «Wanda» خطابًا ردًا عليهم قائلة : «شكرًا لكما على خطابكما». أنا سعيدة فى مدرستى الجديدة و أريدكما أن تحتفظا برسوماتى.

هذه التجربة غيرت «Peggy» و «Maddie» للأبد. لقد تعلموا أن الأشياء الطيبة تبدوا أكثر قيمة من الملابس غالية الثمن. لقد وعدوا بالتدخل فى الحديث دائمًا عندما يكون هناك أى تنمر.

[1] استلم [2] يحتفظ [3] تجربة [4] لطف [5] غال الثمن [6] وعد [7] التنمر

Scanned with CamScanner

General Exercises on the story

تدريبات مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التقييمات

1 Read and circle the correct answer:

1. Wanda always wore the same faded blue ..... every day.
   a. dress b. closet c. letter d. drawing
2. Miss Mason will choose one boy and one girl as ..... in the competition.
   a. walls b. medals
   c. winners d. playgrounds
3. Wanda drew and ..... all the drawings in the competition.
   a. moved b. sang c. spoke d. signed
4. Peggy and Maddie wrote a ..... to Wanda to apologize.
   a. behavior b. letter c. dream d. closet
5. AB Peggy laughed at Wanda's hundred ..... .
   a. books b. dresses c. pens d. coats

2 Read and complete with words from the box.

playground – competition – announce – drawings

Miss Mason announced that it was time for the annual drawing competition. When it was time to [1] ..... the winner, the walls were covered with a hundred beautiful [2] ..... of dresses of all colors and designs. Wanda won the [3] ....., but she wasn't there to receive her medal.

3 Answer the following questions.

1. What did you learn from the story ?

   .....

2. What is the color of Wanda's dress ?

   .....

3. Where did Peggy and Maddie annoy Wanda ?

   .....

4. Who sent a letter to Miss Mason ?

   .....

5. Who drew the beautiful dresses ?

   .....

Scanned with CamScanner

El-Moasser
Homework Notebook

كراسة المعاصر للتقييمات والواجب المنزلى تتضمن :

- التقييمات اليومية والاسبوعية والشهرية.
- مهارات القراءة والكتابة.

Scanned with CamScanner

Contents

El-Moasser Homework Notebook

محتويات كراسة المعاصر للتقييمات والواجب المنزلى

Part 1 El-Moasser Assessments

1 Daily Assessments
١. التقييمات اليومية

2 Weekly Assessments
٢. التقييمات الأسبوعية

3 Monthly Assessments
٣. التقييمات الشهرية

Part 2 Master your skills
مهارات القراءة والكتابة

Scanned with CamScanner

Part 1

1 Daily Assessments
١. التقييمات اليومية

▸ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

UNIT 1

1. I use my tongue to ..... [Lesson 1]
   a. see b. touch
   c. taste d. smell

2. A healthy ..... I follow is getting enough sleep at night. [Lesson 2]
   a. sense b. habit
   c. mind d. food

3. To ..... means to give some of what you have to others. [Lesson 3]
   a. share b. smell
   c. study d. hear

4. Sleeping early ..... me healthy. [Lesson 4]
   a. needs b. uses
   c. does d. keeps

5. Share your poster presentation ..... the class. [Lesson 5]
   a. with b. for
   c. of d. on

UNIT 2

1. We ..... flowers and trees in our garden. [Lesson 1]
   a. design b. plant
   c. help d. volunteer

2. Let's discuss ..... to solve these problems. [Lesson 2]
   a. trash b. routines
   c. solutions d. sounds

3. Egyptians are ..... of their culture. [Lesson 3]
   a. proud b. sad
   c. famous d. kind

4. Dad saw the old school that still ..... today. [Lesson 4]
   a. understands b. stands
   c. sits d. puts

5. ..... a poster about ways to solve a community problem. [Lesson 5]
   a. Do b. Make
   c. Cycle d. Walk

UNIT 3

1. The ..... has a long tail and climbs trees. [Lesson 1]
   a. giraffe b. monkey
   c. zebra d. elephant

2. Animals need our help to stay healthy and ..... . [Lesson 2]
   a. dangerous b. dirty
   c. safe d. old

Scanned with CamScanner

3. A/An ..... is a large hole in a mountain where animals can live. [Lesson 3]

a. entrance b. footprint
c. cave d. moral

4. The Red Sea Dugong eats sea ..... . [Lesson 4]

a. nets b. grass
c. areas d. footprints

5. The children made a ..... of endangered animals. [Lesson 5]

a. drum b. collage
c. fruit d. ball

UNIT 4

1. Ancient Egyptians used giant ..... to build the Pyramids. [Lesson 1]

a. sand b. prizes
c. soil d. stones

2. We go to the ..... to borrow books. [Lesson 2]

a. hospital b. post office
c. library d. shop

3. The ducks swim in the ..... . [Lesson 3]

a. bin b. pan
c. pond d. peak

4. We wear ..... clothes in winter. [Lesson 4]

a. warm b. hot
c. light d. thin

5. A/An ..... is a photo or a drawing. [Lesson 5]

a. lake b. image
c. oasis d. desert

UNIT 5

1. A/An ..... designs new buildings. [Lesson 1]

a. doctor b. firefighter
c. engineer d. nurse

2. Amr is a/an ..... . He needs a good camera to take great photos. [Lesson 2]

a. mentor b. actor
c. photographer d. nurse

3. ..... means to be the right size. [Lesson 3]

a. Skilled b. Strong
c. Fit d. Careful

4. A firefighter uses special tools like water ..... . [Lesson 4]

a. helmets b. hoses
c. ladders d. alarms

5. We use ..... to stick small pieces of paper.

a. glue b. plastic
c. ruler d. water

Scanned with CamScanner

2 Weekly Assessments

٢. التقييمات الأسبوعية

▶ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

WEEKS 1&2

WEEK 1

1. We use our hands to ..... .
   a. see b. touch
   c. smell d. hear

2. In the afternoon, Sarah ..... her homework first.
   a. has b. does
   c. makes d. brushes

WEEK 2

1. The ..... are people and animals in a story.
   a. coins b. settings
   c. characters d. owners

2. I eat a healthy ..... between meals.
   a. snake b. snack
   c. breakfast d. plane

WEEKS 3&4

WEEK 3

1. We ..... to help at the community park.
   a. collect b. volunteer
   c. plant d. feed

2. Throwing trash on the ground makes the streets ..... .
   a. clean b. dirty
   c. great d. wonderful

WEEK 4

1. People in Upper Egypt ..... the sugar cane harvest.
   a. sing b. wear
   c. celebrate d. weave

2. We should walk or ..... to school to stop air pollution.
   a. recycle b. cycle
   c. move d. use

WEEKS 5&6

WEEK 5

1. The zebra has a ..... coat.
   a. spotted b. striped
   c. yellow d. gray

2. Giraffes need tall ..... to reach their food.
   a. rivers b. challenges
   c. trees d. owners

WEEK 6

1. To "....." means to look for and catch animals for food.
   a. laugh b. pretend
   c. hunt d. exercise

2. To help endangered animals, stop ..... .
   a. habitats b. pollution
   c. water d. hoses

Scanned with CamScanner

WEEKS 7 & 8

WEEK 7

1. I ..... trash from the garden.
   a. help b. collect
   c. play d. plant

2. The ..... is black and white. It has a striped coat.
   a. monkey b. zebra
   c. elephant d. lion

WEEK 8

1. Khan Al-Khalili Bazaar is a busy ..... .
   a. oasis b. museum
   c. market d. gift

2. The ..... has many stores and restaurants.
   a. school b. shopping mall
   c. library d. post office

WEEKS 9 & 10

WEEK 9

1. The ..... flies at night.
   a. pond b. bat
   c. bin d. pan

2. Wooden means made of ..... .
   a. wood b. glass
   c. paper d. cotton

WEEK 10

1. A/An ..... helps sick people feel better.
   a. engineer b. doctor
   c. firefighter d. police officer

2. Adam is a/an ..... . He helps young students learn and grow.
   a. actor b. mentor
   c. carpenter d. firefighter

WEEKS 11 & 12

WEEK 11

1. "....." means very good at doing something.
   a. Fit b. Skilled
   c. Wooden d. Poor

2. A firefighter helps people in ..... .
   a. hero b. difference
   c. danger d. uniform

WEEK 12

1. Peggy and Maddie wrote a ..... to Wanda to apologize.
   a. behavior b. letter
   c. dream d. closet

2. Wanda always wore the same faded blue ..... every day.
   a. dress b. closet
   c. letter d. drawing

Scanned with CamScanner

WEEKS 13 & 14

WEEK 13

1. Miss Mason will choose one boy and one girl as ..... in the competition.
   a. trees b. winners
   c. footprints d. leaves

2. Wanda drew and ..... all the drawings in the competition.
   a. moved b. sang
   c. spoke d. signed

WEEK 14

1. The Egyptian ..... has many treasures.
   a. Museum b. Tower
   c. Mall d. Office

2. The Cairo ..... is tall and we can see Cairo from the top.
   a. Oasis b. Tower
   c. Bazaar d. River

WEEKS 15 & 16

WEEK 15

1. A/An ..... works in a school and teaches lessons.
   a. engineer b. nurse
   c. teacher d. firefighter

2. The ..... River is a very long river in Egypt.
   a. Pyramid b. Nile
   c. Tower d. Bazaar

WEEK 16

1. A/An ..... saves people from fires.
   a. police officer b. firefighter
   c. engineer d. photographer

2. Siwa ..... has lots of trees and water.
   a. Tower b. Lake
   c. Pyramid d. Oasis

Scanned with CamScanner

Monthly Assessments through the Exam

October Month

1 General Revision

مراجعة على منهج شهر أكتوبر من خلال اختبارات المحافظات وكتاب الطالب والتقييمات

I Vocabulary

tongue	لسان	smell	حاسة الشم/يشم	do exercises	يتدرب / يتمرن
touch	حاسة اللمس/يلمس	take a shower	يستحم	owner	مالك
wash face	يغسل وجه	brush teeth	يغسل اسنان	greedy	طماع / جشع
restaurant	مطعم	pay for	يدفع [ثمن]	solutions	حلول
jingling	صوت رنين خفيف	problems	مشكلات	culture	ثقافة
traffic	حركة مرور	reduce	يقلل	neighborhood	حى
region	منطقة / إقليم	craft	حرفة يدوية	forest park	غابة مخصصة للتنزه
air pollution	تلوث الهواء	hearing	حاسة السمع	elephant	فيل

II Language in use

1 The present simple tense

- Affirmative statements — الجمل الخبرية المثبتة

I / We / You / They + inf.

He / She / It + inf. + [s / es / ies]

- Negative statements — الجمل الخبرية المنفية

Subject + don't / doesn't + inf.

2 Comparative adjectives — صفات المقارنة

Formation → Short adjectives الصفة القصيرة + er + than

Scanned with CamScanner

2 General Exercises

Model 1

• **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. I ..... delicious food with my tongue.
   a. smell b. taste c. make d. hear
2. "....." means always wanting more than what is needed.
   a. Hungry b. Angry c. Greedy d. Great
3. AB We ..... clothes and give them to people who need them.
   a. collect b. feed c. plant d. help
4. Forest officers work hard to ..... animals and their homes.
   a. throw b. protect c. avoid d. plant
5. SB Everyone uses trash ..... in my community.
   a. pins b. pens c. bins d. pans

Model 2

• **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. What Yasser says is ..... . It doesn't make sense.
   a. illogical b. appear c. dishonest d. dislike
2. SB The ..... uses its trunk to spray water on its body.
   a. monkey b. elephant c. giraffe d. bear
3. Our ..... help us understand the world around us.
   a. butterflies b. senses c. trash d. traffic
4. The ..... is the time and place of a story.
   a. meal b. character c. setting d. jingling
5. I feel so happy when I ..... the cats and dogs their food.
   a. give b. touch c. taste d. smell

Scanned with CamScanner

Model 3

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. We ..... flowers in the garden with our nose.
   a. taste b. touch c. smell d. hear
2. Sarah and her brother ..... computer games every Friday.
   a. plays b. play c. playing d. is playing
3. She ..... fruit and vegetables to stay healthy.
   a. eat b. eating c. eats d. to eat
4. He doesn't ..... to use his car every day.
   a. needs b. need c. to need d. needed
5. We taste delicious food with our ..... .
   a. eyes b. ears c. tongues d. noses
6. Cars don't move quickly because of the problem of ..... .
   a. air b. water c. traffic d. food

Model 4

• Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. We ..... with our ears.
   a. see b. hear c. smell d. taste
2. I love my cat and ..... it every day.
   a. feed b. collect c. volunteer d. throw
3. I touch soft and hard things with my ..... .
   a. hands b. nose c. ears d. tongue
4. My cousin ..... football on weekends.
   a. play b. plays c. playing d. to play
5. ..... Marwa take the bus to school?
   a. Is b. Was c. Do d. Does
6. Omar doesn't ..... the plastic bottles.
   a. collected b. collecting c. collects d. collect

[القاهرة - الساحل ٢٠٢٦]

Scanned with CamScanner

Model 5

• **Read and complete the text with the words in the box.**

wakes – healthy – exercises – habits – unhealthy

Sarah is a healthy 10-year-old girl. She has good [1] ..... every day to stay strong and healthy. She [2] ..... up early at 6:00 a.m. She does some simple [3] ..... in the garden. She eats [4] ..... food. These foods give her energy for the day. She sleeps for 9 hours every night.

Model 6

• **Read and complete the text with the words in the box.**

collect - feed - volunteer - trash - plant

Amira and Adam are friends. Every Saturday, they [1] ..... to help their community. They [2] ..... trees in the park. They clean [3] ..... from the streets. They [4] ..... clothes and give them to people who need them. [الغربية - طنطا ٢٠٢٦]

Model 7

• **Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.**

1. He ..... **(drink)** coffee every morning.
2. Hani doesn't ..... **(likes)** to play tennis.
3. He ..... **(go)** to school every day.
4. ..... **(Do)** your brother read a story every night ?

Model 8

خاص بطلاب الأزهر الشريف

• **Read and correct the underlined mistakes.**

1. Every Friday, Hazem and Maged **plays** tennis. [.....]
2. He **catch** the bus to Giza every day. [.....]
3. He doesn't **goes** to the club after school. [.....]
4. Do they **walks** to school every day? [.....]

Scanned with CamScanner

Monthly Assessments through the Exam

November Month

1 General Revision

مراجعة على منهج شهر نوفمبر من خلال اختبارات المحافظات وكتاب الطالب والتقييمات

I Vocabulary

footprints	آثار الأقدام	cave	كهف	trick	خدعة / يخدع
mistakes	أخطاء	pretend	يتظاهر	endangered	مهدد بالإنقراض
disappearing	الاختفاء	sea grass	عشب البحر	the Arabian Leopard	الفهدالعربى
the Red Sea Dugong	أطوم البحر	Siwa Oasis	واحة سيوه	tour guide	مرشد سياحى
bazaar	بازار / سوق	gifts	هدايا	treasures	كنوز
post office	مكتب بريد	packages	طرود بريدية	shopping mall	مركز تجارى
monastery	دير	doctor	طبيب	mentor	مرشد تعليمى
St. Catherine Mountain	جبل سانت كاترين	firefighter	رجل إطفاء	voice-over actor	مؤدى صوتى

II Language in use

1 Superlative adjectives — صفات التفضيل

Formation → .... the + short adjective + est

2 Prepositions of place — حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان

in	فى	on	على	in front of	أمام
behind	خلف	next to	بجانب	between	بين

Scanned with CamScanner

2 General Exercises

Model 1

• **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. I go to Khan Al-Khalili Bazaar to buy some ..... .
   a. trees b. pyramids c. gifts d. tourists
2. A/An ..... wears a blue uniform in the hospitals.
   a. nurse b. firefighter c. engineer d. mentor
3. ..... can sail on the Nile River.
   a. Trains b. Cars c. Boats d. Buses
4. SB If you ..... to do something, you should do it.
   a. design b. promise c. build d. fix
5. An engineer designs ..... .
   a. pictures b. birds c. buildings d. fires

Model 2

• **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. The Egyptian Museum has many ..... to see.
   a. trees b. treasures c. mountains d. camels
2. SB A wildlife ..... takes pictures of wild animals.
   a. engineer b. mentor c. doctor d. photographer
3. Near the ....., tourists can ride on camels.
   a. museums b. Pyramids c. bazaars d. towers
4. When the ..... rings, a firefighter quickly puts on his equipment.
   a. tank b. alarm c. hose d. ladder
5. Tourists ..... many pictures at the Pyramids.
   a. make b. send c. take d. cut

Scanned with CamScanner

Model 3

• **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. The elephant uses its ..... to spray water on its body.
   a. tail b. trunk c. coat d. fur
2. At the ..... , people send letters and packages.
   a. shopping mall b. post office
   c. library d. museum
3. The dog was ..... the chair.
   a. in b. next c. front d. behind
4. We went to Khan Al-Khalili ..... to buy gifts.
   a. Museum b. Tower c. Bazaar d. Oasis
5. Foxes are ..... than other animals.
   a. smart b. smarter c. as smart d. the smartest
6. My school is in front ..... my house.
   a. of b. off c. at d. on

Model 4

• **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. Tourists can see many treasures at the Egyptian ..... .
   a. Lake b. Museum c. Oasis d. Sea
2. The blue box is bigger ..... the yellow one.
   a. then b. than c. this d. there
3. The Red Sea ..... is my favorite sea animal.
   a. Leopard b. Fox c. Dugong d. Monkey
4. My bike is ..... to the bus.
   a. in b. between c. in front d. next
5. The ..... is black and white. It has a striped coat.
   a. bear b. zebra c. monkey d. lion
6. SB The armchair is ..... of the bookcase.
   a. in front b. next c. between d. behind

Scanned with CamScanner

Model 5

• **Read and complete the text with the words in the box.**

shopping mall - borrow - sick - post office - school

I have different places in my town. Young children go to [1] ..... every morning to learn. They can [2] ..... books from the library. When people feel [3] ..... , they go to the hospital. People enjoy going to the [4] ..... where many shops sell different things.

Model 6

• **Read and complete the text with the words in the box.**

parrots – project - read - animals - park

Yesterday, Ali went to a forest [1] ..... with his family. He enjoyed it very much. They saw lots of different [2] ..... like lions, elephants and bears .He saw his favorite birds, the [3] ..... . He was a bit sad because he didn't see the bats; he is doing a [4] ..... on them at a school.

[الجيزة - العجوزة ٢٠٢٦]

Model 7

• **Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.**

1. The library is in front ..... **(off)** the hospital.
2. His bag is ..... **(heavy)** than his sister's bag.
3. The school is ..... **(behind)** the mall and the restaurant.
4. The village is ..... **(quiet)** than the city.

Model 8

خاص بطلاب الأزهر الشريف

• **Read and correct the underlined mistakes.**

1. The rabbit is **fast** than the turtle. [.....]
2. The flowers are **on** the vase. [.....]
3. The table is **next** the box and the armchair. [.....]
4. The giraffe is **tall** than the lion. [.....]

Scanned with CamScanner

Part 2

1 Master your skills

1 Reading Skill

١. مهارة القراءة

1. Identify the general idea

تعلم كيفية التعامل مع سؤال قطعة الفهم

1

Omar lives in a small village. The village is famous for making delicious cheese. In his village, farmers grow rice, potatoes and tomatoes. Life is good in the village.

• The text is about Omar's ..... .

a. family b. school c. village d. city

2

A teacher can change their students' lives. They work for many hours every day. It's hard work, but it's exciting. A good teacher is always ready to learn.

• The main idea of the text is about ..... .

a. teachers b. vets c. students d. doctors

3

I live in a city called Hurghada. It's in the east of Egypt. There are lots of interesting things to do. It has some beautiful houses and interesting bazaars.

• The main idea of the text is about ..... .

a. Cairo b. Giza c. Hurghada d. the Red Sea

4

Animals are all important. Spiders are very helpful. They eat insects. Snakes and crocodiles eat small animals.

• The main idea of the text is about ..... .

a. animals b. plants c. jobs d. homes

Scanned with CamScanner

2. Demonstrate understanding of specific details

1

I work in a school library. It's my job to look after all the books. I buy lots of new books and I help students find the information they need.

• I work in a school ..... .

a. playground b. classroom c. hall d. library

2

Talia lives in a big house. She can relax and do her homework in her bedroom. Talia's mom likes the living room with the balcony where she can see the whole street.

• Talia can do her homework in the ..... .

a. kitchen b. bedroom c. bathroom d. hall

3

I'm Dina. I'm healthy. I do a lot of exercise at the club. I practice tennis four times a week. I don't like cola. It is unhealthy. I don't eat candy, but I like fruits.

• Dina does a lot of ..... at the club.

a. jobs b. exercise c. food d. cakes

4

Camels are amazing. They are beautiful and strong. Their milk is delicious. They are perfect for the desert.

• Camels' ..... is delicious.

a. water b. milk c. juice d. fur

3. Determine the meaning of words and phrases

1

My parents work on tourist boats so I go with them. They travel a lot. I see many **interesting** places. I meet people from all over the world.

• The underlined word "**interesting**" means "..... ".

a. bad b. fresh c. wonderful d. hot

Scanned with CamScanner

2

The fox lives in the desert. It loses heat from its ears during the day. The fox's **thick** fur keeps it warm at night.

- The underlined word "**thick**" means "……".

a. small b. short c. heavy d. bad

3

I'm Mona. I'm healthy. I like fruits. My favorite fruits are grapes and bananas. My mom makes an **awesome** banana milkshake.

- The underlined word "**awesome**" means "……".

a. bad b. late c. unhealthy d. wonderful

4

I'm a farmer. I look after the trees and I give them water. I send a lot of the fruit to the factory to make orange juice. I also **sell** some of my oranges to the supermarket.

- The underlined word "**sell**" is the opposite of "……".

a. by b. buy c. try d. cry

4. Describe the relationship between two people, events or ideas

1

I want to be a bus driver. For me, it's the best job in the world. A bus driver helps us every day. He takes us to school.

- How does the bus driver help us? ……

2

Mona works at the supermarket near my house. We see her every week when we buy food. She helps us when we can't find something.

- How can Mona help you at the supermarket? ……

3

A bird and a bear are in the river. They are very hungry . They are both looking at a big fish. The bear has claws. The bird has a beak. The bear is stronger than the bird.

- Who is stronger, the bear or the bird? ……

Scanned with CamScanner

5. Make logical inferences from the text

1

For a teacher, every day is different. Students always ask surprising questions. Teachers need to think quickly. A teacher can change their students' lives so teachers need to be very patient. A good teacher is always ready to learn.

- Why do teachers need to think quickly? .....

2

Camels have large, flat feet so they don't sink in sand. They can live without water for a long time. They have special ways to close their noses and eyes to stop sand from coming in.

- Why do you think camels are perfect for the desert? Mention one reason. .....

6. Summarize the key supporting details and ideas

1

I'm a tour guide. People come to my country and it's my job to explain the history and tell the tourists lots of interesting information about the places they visit.

- Summarize the text in one sentence. .....

2

There are a lot of places in my city. I go to the supermarket to buy food. I go to school to learn. When we are sick, we go to the hospital.

- Summarize the text in one sentence. .....

3

Horses have large, beautiful eyes. They eat grass and drink fresh water. They can live in the desert, but they need people to look after them.

- Summarize the text in one sentence. .....

4

I'm Adam, I'm healthy. I like sports. My favorite sport is basketball. I don't drink cola because it's unhealthy. I drink milk. It's healthy.

- Summarize the text in one sentence. .....

Scanned with CamScanner

2 Writing Skill

٢. مهارة الكتابة

لا تقتصر مهارة الكتابة علي استخدام القلم للكتابة في سطور فارغة ولكن مهارة الكتابة هي فن التعبير عن الافكار.

اجعل طفلك دائمًا يستمتع بمهارة الكتابة ولا تجعلها ثقلاً عليه.

كيف تتعامل مع كراسة المعاصر لتنمية مهارة الكتابة مع كل وحدة على حده.

١ أتبع الخطوات التالية :

١- الخطـــوه الأولـــى : تهيئة الطالب للتعامل مع مهارة الكتابة باستخدام المفردات والوظائف اللغوية لكل وحدة.

٢- الخطـــوة الثانيـــة : التدرب على المفردات اللغوية للوحدة.

٣- الخطـــوة الثالثـــة : التدرب على الوظائف اللغوية للوحدة.

٤- الخطـــوة الرابعـــة : التدرب على كتابة جمل مرتبطة بالمفردات والوظائف اللغوية التي تم دراستها.

٢ قيّم نفسك :

١- هل تتذكر المفردات اللغوية التي درستها في الوحدة؟

٢- هل تتذكر الوظائف اللغوية التي درستها في الوحدة؟

٣- هل لديك القدرة علي كتابة وقراءة الكلمات والجمل الخاصة بالوحدة ؟

Scanned with CamScanner

2 Writing Practice

• تدرب بساعد التلاميذ على كتابة الفقرات الإنشائية خطوة بخطوة. • قم بحل التدريبات خطوة بخطوة حتى تتمكن من إتقان مهارة الكتابة. • تدرب على كتابة فقرات إنشائية.

Unit 1	Step 1 Vocabulary اختبر مدى إتقانك للمفردات اللغوية التالية	Step 2 Sentences متبقا الخطوة الأولى رتب الكلمات الآتية	Step 3 Paragraphs متبقا الخطوة الأولى والثانية اكتب فقرة إنشائية
Our five senses	▸ Write the meaning : حواس ..... مدهش ..... حريق ..... آمن	▸ Reorder the words : 1. have - We - amazing - five - senses. ..... 2. help - safe - stay - us - Senses. ..... 3. a fire – know - there's - We	▸ Write a paragraph about : **Our five senses** ....
My daily routine	روتين يومى ..... صحى ..... إفطار ..... رياضة	1. routine - the same - follow - I . ..... 2. have - I - breakfast - a healthy. ..... 3. for - I - one - play – hour - sports.	**My daily routine** ....
How to stay healthy	عادات ..... عقل ..... يقظ ..... كل ليلة	1. Healthy - habits – a lot – help – us. ..... 2. nine - night - Sleep - hours - every. ..... 3. stay - helps - Sleeping - mind - sharp.	**How to stay healthy** ....

Scanned with CamScanner

Unit 2	Step 1 Vocabulary اختبر مدى إتقانك للمفردات اللغوية التالية	Step 2 Sentences متبعًا الخطوة الأولى رتب الكلمات الآتية	Step 3 Paragraphs متبعًا الخطوة الأولى والثانية اكتب فقرة إنشائية
Helping community	▸ **Write the meaning :** ..... مجتمع ..... قمامة ..... يتطوع ..... يجمع	▸ **Reorder the words :** 1. help - It's - community - good - to - our. ..... 2. clean - streets - trash - can - We - from. ..... 3. collect - We - for - poor - clothes - the.	▸ **Write a paragraph about :** **Helping community** ....
Problems and solutions	..... مشكلات ..... حركة المرور ..... بدلًا من ..... متسخ	1. problems - are - many - There. ..... 2. traffic - first - The - is - problem. ..... 3. throw - Don't - the ground - trash - on.	**Problems and solutions** ....
Culture in Egypt	..... مناطق ..... يحتفل ..... تقاليد ..... سجاد	1. regions - Egypt - special - two - has. ..... 2. spring - celebrate - People - festival. ..... 3. carpets – colorful – weave – People.	**Culture in Egypt** ....

Scanned with CamScanner

Unit 3	Step 1 Vocabulary اختبر مدى إتقانك للمفردات اللغوية التالية	Step 2 Sentences متبعًا الخطوة الأولى رتب الكلمات الآتية	Step 3 Paragraphs متبعًا الخطوة الأولى والثانية اكتب فقرة إنشائية
Animals at forest park	▸ **Write the meaning :** ..... مرشد الغابة ..... الأسود ..... يتسلق ..... يصطاد	▸ **Reorder the words :** 1. park - people - Many - visit - forest. ..... 2. visitors - helps - guide - The – forest. ..... 3. at – night - Lions – hunt – often.	▸ **Write a paragraph about :** **Animals at forest park** ....
Helping animals	..... رعاية ..... خاص / مميز ..... قفص ..... يحمى	1. special - animal - Each - care - needs. ..... 2. cages - Birds - need - clean. ..... 3. protect - should - We - animals.	**Helping animals** ....
Endangered animals	..... معرض للخطر ..... يختفى ..... مواطن ..... تلوث	1. animals - Many - disappear - will. ..... 2. habitats - their - in - houses - People - build. ..... 3. pollution - need - We - stop - to.	**Endangered animals** ....

Scanned with CamScanner

Unit 4	Step 1 Vocabulary اختبر مدى إتقانك للمفردات اللغوية التالية	Step 2 Sentences متبعًا الخطوة الأولى رتب الكلمات الآتية	Step 3 Paragraphs متبعًا الخطوة الأولى والثانية اكتب فقرة إنشائية
Amazing places in Egypt	▸ **Write the meaning :** ..... الأهرامات ..... متحف ..... كنوز ..... هدايا	▸ **Reorder the words :** **1.** pictures - take - Tourists - many. ..... **2.** Museum - Egyptian - The - amazing - is. ..... **3.** there - people – gifts – buy – Many.	▸ **Write a paragraph about :** **Amazing places in Egypt** ....
Places in your city	..... هام ..... أماكن ..... مريض ..... متصل	**1.** school - The - place - important - is - an. ..... **2.** feel - sick - Doctors - better - help - people. ..... **3.** connected - stay - us - helps - The - office - post.	**Places in your city** ....
St. Cathrine Mountain	..... جنوب سيناء ..... جبل ..... زاهى الألوان ..... مغامرة	**1.** Mountain - St. Cathrine - Egypt - in - is. ..... **2.** rocks - colorful - They - see - can. ..... **3.** adventures - do - We - there - can.	**St. Cathrine Mountain** ....

Scanned with CamScanner

Unit 5	Step 1 Vocabulary اختبر مدى إتقانك للمفردات اللغوية التالية	Step 2 Sentences متبعًا الخطوة الأولى رتب الكلمات الآتية	Step 3 Paragraphs متبعًا الخطوة الأولى والثانية اكتب فقرة إنشائية
Different jobs	▸ **Write the meaning :** ..... وظائف ..... صحة ..... دور ..... يصمم	▸ **Reorder the words :** **1.** jobs - All - important - very - are. ..... **2.** buildings - new - design - Engineers. ..... **3.** important - Nurses - role - play - an.	▸ **Write a paragraph about :** **Different jobs** ....
A wildlife photographer	..... مميز ..... الطبيعة ..... بعيد جدًا ..... صور	**1.** special - A wildlife - is - job - a - photographer. ..... **2.** photos - takes - great - very - He. ..... **3.** animals - wild - He - takes - pictures - of.	**A wildlife photographer** ....
Firefighters	..... سميك ..... معدات ..... خراطيم مياه ..... حرائق	**1.** a fire - works at - station - A firefighter. ..... **2.** uniform - thick - wears - He - a - protective. ..... **3.** hoses - He - uses - ladders - and.	**Firefighters** ....

Scanned with CamScanner

Listening Texts

نصوص الاستماع الخاصة بكتاب الشرح

Listen and write (T) True or (F) False

Unit 1

General Exercises on Lesson 1

Ms. Mona is our science teacher. We will learn about amazing senses today. Senses help us understand the world around us. Our senses are like sight, hearing and smell.

General Exercises on Lesson 2

Mazen is a 10-year-old boy. He lives in Cairo. He is a healthy boy. He follows healthy habits. He gets enough sleep at night. He also eats healthy food every day. At the park, he does some exercises every morning.

General Exercises on Lessons 4 & 5

Noha is fit and healthy. She has many healthy habits which help her stay strong. She wakes up very early and washes her face. She has a healthy breakfast with her family.

Sample Test 1 on Unit 1

One day, Goha was hungry, but he didn't have enough money to buy food. He smelled delicious soup from a restaurant. The owner asked Goha to pay for the smell. Goha cleverly offered to pay with the sound of his coins. The owner laughed and invited him in to share the soup.

Sample Test 2 on Unit 1

Sarah is a healthy girl. She wakes up early every day. She eats eggs and brown bread for breakfast. At school, she drinks plenty of water. In the evening, she goes to bed at 9:30 p.m. Sarah's healthy habits help her feel good and do well at school.

Sample Test 1 for Al-Azhar students on Unit 1

- Listen and choose the correct answer:

Goha was a funny man. One day, he was walking through the market. He was hungry, but he didn't have enough money. Suddenly, he smelled something delicious from the restaurant. He stopped and sat outside the restaurant to enjoy the smell of the soup.

Sample Test 2 for Al-Azhar students on Unit 1

It's important to have a healthy day. Having healthy habits helps us live a better life. When we eat healthy food, we stay strong and fit. Getting enough sleep every night keeps our mind sharp. Doing exercises is also important for us.

Unit 2

General Exercises on Lesson 1

We go to the park to help on weekends. We plant flowers and trees there. We collect trash from the park to keep it clean. We feed the birds. It's really fun to volunteer and make the park nice for everyone.

Scanned with CamScanner

General Exercises on Lesson 2

Trash is a big problem in my community. The streets look dirty. Our neighbors think we can solve this problem if we work together. We can put new bins everywhere to put trash in them.

Sample Test 3 on Unit 2

Egypt has two special regions: the Delta in the north and Upper Egypt in the south. Each region has its traditions and culture. Even though the two places have some differences, they share many of the same traditions. Egyptians are proud of their culture.

Sample Test 4 on Unit 2

It's good to help our community. We can clean trash from the streets. We can also plant trees in the parks. We can feed the dogs and cats. We can volunteer at the community park. We can collect clothes and give them to people who need them.

Sample Test 1 for Al-Azhar students on Unit 2

• **Listen and choose the correct answer:**

Egypt has two special regions: the Delta in the north and Upper Egypt in the south. In the Delta, people make crafts and wear modern clothes. In Upper Egypt, men often wear turbans and people weave carpets. All Egyptians are proud of their culture and celebrate festivals together.

Sample Test 2 for Al-Azhar students on Unit 2

Air pollution is a very serious problem. There are many ways to stop air pollution. We should plant trees in our community. We should keep our community clean. We should use less plastic and walk or cycle to school.

Unit 3

General Exercises on Lesson 1

Bears are wild animals. They are big and strong animals. They have thick fur and sharp claws, so they are dangerous. Bears can catch fish. A baby bear is called a cub.

General Exercises on Lesson 2

Animals need our help to stay healthy and safe. Everyone can help protect animals in simple ways. Small acts of kindness make our world better. When we care for animals, we create a safer place for them. Being kind to animals teaches us to be better people.

Lesson 3

Pop Quiz on Pronunciation

[1] Listen and write the missing letters.

1. fruit 2. draw 3. plant 4. frown

General Exercises on Lessons 4&5

Many animals around the world are in danger of disappearing forever. These animals are called endangered species. The Arabian Leopard is one of the most endangered animals in Egypt and the Middle East. Less than 200 of these beautiful cats remain in the wild. One reason is that these animals are in danger because people build houses in their habitats.

Sample Test 5 on Unit 3

Animals need our help to stay healthy and safe. Some animals live in the wild,

Scanned with CamScanner

while others live in zoos or homes. Each animal needs special care to live well. Zoo animals need special attention, too.

Sample Test 6 on Unit 3

Pets need daily care from their owners. Dogs need exercise. Rabbits eat fresh vegetables, and they are healthier than other animals. Birds need cleaner cages than other animals.

Sample Test 1 for Al-Azhar students on Unit 3

• Listen and choose the correct answer:

Wild animals face different challenges. Their homes are getting smaller because of new cities. Wild animals need clean water and safe places to live. Forest officers work hard to protect these animals and their homes.

Sample Test 2 for Al-Azhar students on Unit 3

Many animals are in danger of disappearing forever. The Red Sea Dugong is one of the most endangered animals in Egypt. These gentle sea animals eat sea grass. They are in danger because of pollution and fishing nets. To help these animals, we need to create safe areas for them.

General Exercises on Lesson 1

Egypt has a lot of interesting places to visit, for example, the Egyptian Museum. The Egyptian Museum is an amazing place. Many tourists like to visit the Egyptian Museum. It has many treasures to see.

Lesson 3

Pop Quiz on Pronunciation

• Listen and write the missing letters.

1. pond 2. bear 3. bin 4. peak

General Exercises on Lessons 4&5

Siwa Oasis is famous for its natural beauty. Many tourists visit it to relax and enjoy nature. There are many places to visit in Siwa Oasis. At the Salt Lake, we can swim and take photos. In the desert, we can see sunset. People can eat sweet dates and buy olive oil at a good price in Siwa Oasis. We wear summer clothes at daytime and a jacket at night time.

Sample Test 7 on Unit 4

I'm Fareeda. I like shopping. The shopping mall is my favorite place in my city. It has many stores and restaurants where people buy things and eat. Behind the shopping mall, there is a museum with treasures that teach us about history.

Sample Test 8 on Unit 4

Siwa Oasis is an amazing place in Egypt. There are many interesting places to see there. You can swim in the Salt Lake. You can see the sunset in the desert. Siwa Oasis has sweet dates and olive oil. When you visit Siwa Oasis, you should wear a jacket during the night.

Sample Test 1 for Al-Azhar students on Unit 4:

• Listen and choose the correct answer

Many tourists visit St. Catherine Mountain in South Sinai. They wake up early to climb the mountain. They wear warm clothes because it is cold. Along the way, they see colorful rocks.

Scanned with CamScanner

Sample Test 2 for Al-Azhar students on Unit 4

• **Listen and choose the correct answer**

Ali enjoys visiting the school library every week. The library is quiet and full of interesting books. Ali likes reading stories about animals. Reading helps Ali learn new words.

General Exercises on Lesson 1

My cousin Nabila is a nurse. She works in a big hospital in Alexandria. She wears a blue uniform. She helps doctors and cares for the patients at the hospital. She is very kind and helpful.

General Exercises on Lesson 2

Salma works with puppets. She has a great job! She uses puppets to tell stories. She does many shows for children. She loves seeing children smile and laugh.

Sample Test 9 on Unit 5

I'm Ali. I want to be a wildlife photographer. It is an interesting job. Wildlife photographers take pictures of wild animals. They can take great photos in faraway places. They wait a long time to get the best picture.

Sample Test 10 on Unit 5

There are many special jobs around us. A mentor does very kind and helpful work. A mentor helps shy students become brave. A mentor feels so nice when students do well. A voice-over actor makes voices for cartoons. A voice-over actor can make high voices and low voices.

Sample Test 1 for Al-Azhar students on Unit 5:

• **Listen and choose the correct answer:**

A carpenter is a skilled worker. He works in a workshop. He has a lot of tools to use. He uses wood to make furniture and houses. He knows how to choose good wood to make strong things. A carpenter's job is very useful in the community.

Sample Test 2 for Al-Azhar students on Unit 5:

• **Listen and choose the correct answer:**

All jobs are important. Doctors are very important for all of us. They help sick people and check their health. Engineers design new buildings. Firefighters stop fires and save people.

Scanned with CamScanner

Answers of Topics

إجابات موضوعات الكتاب

Unit 1

General Exercises on Lesson 1

«Our senses»

Our senses help us understand the world. We hear birds. We smell flowers. We see colors. Our senses keep us safe.

General Exercises on Lesson 2

«Your healthy habits»

I follow healthy habits every day. I wake up early. I exercise. I sleep well. I feel healthy.

General Exercises on Lesson 3

«Sharing with others»

Sharing is good. We share food and toys. We help others. Sharing makes people happy.

General Exercises on Lessons 4&5

«Your healthy routine»

It's important to follow a healthy routine. I have some healthy habits. First, I wake up early. Then, I eat healthy food. Finally, I exercise. This helps me stay strong.

Sample Test 1 on Unit 1

«Healthy eating habits»

We should eat healthy food. We eat fruits and vegetables. We drink water. Breakfast is important.

Sample Test 2 on Unit 1

«My favorite healthy snacks»

My favorite healthy snacks are apples and nuts. I eat them between meals. Snacks give me energy. They make me healthy and strong.

• Sample Test 1 for Al-Azhar students on Unit 1

«Habits you do daily»

I follow the same routine every day. I drink plenty of water. I do exercises. I sleep early. My daily habits help me do well at school.

• Sample Test 2 for Al-Azhar students on Unit 1

«How to stay healthy»

Healthy habits help us stay strong. Drinking plenty of water is important. To stay healthy, sleep for nine hours every night. Getting enough sleep helps our mind stay sharp.

Unit 2

General Exercises on Lesson 1

«How you help your community»

I help my community. I clean streets. I plant trees. I help people. This makes the community better.

General Exercises on Lesson 2

«Traffic problem»

Traffic is a problem. Cars don't move quickly near school. We can use buses instead. This helps reduce traffic.

General Exercises on Lesson 3

«Your community traditions»

I live in the Delta region. The Delta region has its traditions. We celebrate the Spring Festival. Farmers grow rice and cotton.

Scanned with CamScanner

General Exercises on Lessons 4&5

«Your community's history»

My grandpa told me about our community. Our neighborhood was very different in the past. There were small houses and gardens. There was a beautiful old market. People sold fresh vegetables.

Sample Test 3 on Unit 2

«How to stop air pollution»

Air pollution is bad. Cars and factories make the air dirty. We can walk or cycle to school. We should use less plastic. Planting trees helps clean the air.

Sample Test 4 on Unit 2

«Culture in Egypt»

Egypt has two special regions. Each region has its traditions and culture. In Upper Egypt, people weave colorful carpets. In the Delta, farmers grow rice.

• Sample Test 1 for Al-Azhar students on Unit 2

«Life in Upper Egypt»

In Upper Egypt, life is different. People make pottery. Families sing traditional songs. Men wear galabeyas. Women wear colorful dresses.

• Sample Test 2 for Al-Azhar students on Unit 2

«Life in the Delta Region»

In the Delta region, people celebrate the Spring Festival with colorful decorations. Farmers grow rice and cotton. Many people work in factories. Women are known for making clothes.

Unit 3

General Exercises on Lesson 1

«A day at the forest park»

I visited the forest park last week. I saw many animals. My favorite animals are elephants and monkeys. The elephant is big and gray. The monkey is small.

General Exercises on Lesson 2

«Taking care of animals»

Animals need care. Dogs need exercise. Birds need clean cages. Elephants need big spaces to move around.

General Exercises on Lessons 4&5

«The Red Sea Dugong»

Many animals are in danger. Some may disappear forever. The Red Sea Dugong is an endangered animal in Egypt. The Red Sea Dugong eats sea grass. Pollution and fishing nets harm it.

Sample Test 5 on Unit 3

"Forest animals"

There are many animals at the forest park. The elephant is big. The lion is strong. The monkey is small.

Sample Test 6 on Unit 3

"Your favorite animal"

My favorite animal is the monkey. It is small. It has a long tail. It climbs trees.

• Sample Test 1 for Al-Azhar students on Unit 3

«Elephants»

Elephants are big and gray. They use their trunk to spray water on their bodies. They have long trunks. They are amazing animals.

Scanned with CamScanner

• Sample Test 2 for Al-Azhar students on Unit 3

«Giraffes»

We can see giraffes at the forest park. The giraffe is tall. It has a long neck. It eats leaves. It has a spotted coat.

Unit 4

General Exercises on Lesson 1

"A place you like to visit with your friends"

Egypt has many amazing places. I want to visit the Pyramids with my friends. The Pyramids are very famous. We can ride camels near the Pyramids.

General Exercises on Lesson 2

«Places you go in your city»

My city has many important places. My favorite place is school. Students learn and meet friends there. The hospital helps sick people. We can shop and eat at the shopping mall. At the museum, we learn about history.

General Exercises on Lessons 4&5

«A visit to St. Catherine Mountain»

By Tarek

March 15, 2024

Many tourists visit St. Catherine Mountain. They wake up early to climb it. It is cold, so they wear warm clothes. At the top, they visit the monastery. It is a popular place for adventure.

Sample Test 7 on Unit 4

«Schools»

Schools are places for learning. Students study many subjects. Teachers help them learn. The library has many books. Schools help students grow smart and strong.

Sample Test 8 on Unit 4

«Climbing the mountain»

Climbing the mountain is a great adventure. Many people enjoy climbing St. Catherine Mountain. They see colorful rocks. They take some pictures. They have fun with their family and friends. They enjoy the natural world.

• Sample Test 1 for Al-Azhar students on Unit 4

«Siwa Oasis»

Siwa Oasis is a beautiful place. It has lots of trees. You can swim in the Salt Lake. The oasis has delicious sweet dates. We can visit the desert and enjoy the sunset.

• Sample Test 2 for Al-Azhar students on Unit 4

«Amazing places in Egypt»

The Pyramids in Egypt are very nice. Tourists take many pictures there. The Egyptian Museum is an amazing place. It has many treasures to see. Khan Al-Khalilli Bazaar is a busy market. Many people go there to buy gifts.

Unit 5

General Exercises on Lesson 1

«What do you want to be when you grow up ?»

I want to be a doctor. I like helping people. Doctors check patients. They work in hospitals.

General Exercises on Lesson 2

«Amazing jobs»

There are many jobs in our community. Some jobs are interesting. Wildlife photographers take pictures of animals. Voice-over actors make voices for cartoons.

Scanned with CamScanner

General Exercises on Lesson 3

«A carpenter»

A carpenter works with wood. They make beautiful furniture. They use nails and hammers. Their job is important.

General Exercises on Lessons 4&5

«Firefighters»

Firefighters save people. They stop fires. They wear special clothes. They are brave.

Sample Test 9 on Unit 5

«Important jobs»

There are many jobs. Doctors help sick people. Engineers design buildings. Nurses care for patients. Firefighters save lives.

Sample Test 10 on Unit 5

«Wildlife photographers»

Wildlife photographers have an interesting job. They take pictures of wild animals. They find the biggest lions and the smallest birds. They use their camera to take great photos in faraway places. Sometimes they wait a long time in the desert to get the best picture. They feel so happy when they get the best photo.

• Sample Test 1 for Al-Azhar students on Unit 5

«Voice-over actors»

Being a voice-over actor is exciting. Voice-over actors make voices for cartoons. They make high voices and low voices. They can talk very fast or very slow.

• Sample Test 2 for Al-Azhar students on Unit 5

«Mentors»

Mentors do very kind work. They help young students learn and grow. They help shy students become brave. They are very helpful.

ترخيص وزارة التربية والتعليم ١٠٢ - ٦ - ٢ - ٦٧

Scanned with CamScanner

يُصرف مجانًا مع الكتاب
كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية
والمراجعة النهائية

أدخل كودك الشخصى
الموجود على ظهر الغلاف

EL-MOASSER
GUIDE

الآن بجميع المكتبات للصف الرابع الابتدائى

سلسلة كتب...
المعاصر الامتحان

فى:
- اللغة الإنجليزية
- Connect Plus
- Mathematics
- Science

فى:
- اللغة العربية
- الدراسات الاجتماعية
- العلوم

بالداخل
كراسة المعاصر
للتقييمات اليومية والأسبوعية
والشهرية والتسميع
والواجب المنزلى

Master Your Skills

قاموس المعاصر الناطق
امسح QR CODE
داخل الكتاب

English

4th Primary
2027
FIRST TERM

GPS
AL TALABA BOOKSTORE
For printing, publication & distribution
El Faggala - Cairo - Egypt
Tel.: 02/ 259 340 12 - 259 377 91
15014
www.gpseducation.com

Scanned with CamScanner